

APPLE II
REFERENCE MANUAL

January, 1978

Apple Computer Inc.
10260 Bandley Dr.
Cupertino, CA
95014

APPLE II REFERENCE MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| Subject | Page |
|---|------|
| A. Getting Started With Your Apple II | 1 |
| 1. Unpacking | 1 |
| 2. Warranty Registration Card | 1 |
| 3. Check for Shipping Damage | 2 |
| 4. Power Up | 2 |
| 5. Apple II Speaks Several Languages | 3 |
| 6. Apple Integer BASIC | 3 |
| 7. Running Your First and Second Programs | 3 |
| 8. Running 16K Startrek | 3 |
| 9. Loading a Program Tape | 4 |
| 10. Breakout and Color Demos Tapes | 6 |
| 11. Breakout and Color Demos Program Listings | 12 |
| 12. How to play Startrek | 14 |
| 13. Loading HIRES Demo Tape | 15 |
| B. Apple II Integer BASIC | 17 |
| 1. BASIC Commands | 18 |
| 2. BASIC Operators | 19 |
| 3. BASIC Functions | 22 |
| 4. BASIC Statements | 23 |
| 5. Special Control and Editing | 28 |
| 6. Table A - Graphics Colors | 29 |
| 7. Special Controls and Features | 30 |
| 8. BASIC Error Messages | 32 |
| 9. Simplified Memory Map | 33 |
| 10. Data Read/Save Subroutines | 34 |
| 11. Simple Tone Subroutines | 43 |
| 12. High Resolution Graphics Subroutines and Listing | 46 |

VIDEO
DETECTOR
DIODE IN60

TABLE OF CONTENTS ... CONT.

| Subject | Page |
|--|------|
| 13. Additional BASIC Program Examples | 55 |
| a. Rod's Color Pattern (4K) | 55 |
| b. Pong (4K) | 56 |
| c. Color Sketch (4K) | 57 |
| d. Mastermind (8K) | 59 |
| e. Biorhythm (4K) | 61 |
| f. Dragon Maze (8K) | 63 |
| C. Apple II Firmware | 67 |
| 1. System Monitor Commands | 68 |
| 2. Control and Editing Characters | 72 |
| 3. Special Controls and Features | 74 |
| 4. Annotated Monitor and Dis-assembler Listing | 76 |
| 5. Binary Floating Point Package | 94 |
| 6. Sweet 16 Interpreter Listing | 96 |
| 7. 6502 Op Codes | 100 |
| D. Apple II Hardware | 106 |
| 1. Getting Started with Your Apple II Board | 107 |
| 2. Apple II Switching Power Supply | 110 |
| 3. Interfacing with the Home TV | 112 |
| 4. Simple Serial Output | 114 |
| 5. Interfacing the Apple - | |
| Signals, Loading, Pin Connections | 122 |
| 6. Memory - | |
| Options, Expansion, Map, Address | 133 |
| 7. System Timing | 140 |
| 8. Schematics | 141 |

GETTING STARTED WITH YOUR APPLE II

Unpacking

Don't throw away the packing material. Save it for the unlikely event that you may need to return your Apple II for warranty repair. If you bought an Apple II Board only, see hardware section in this manual on how to get started. You should have received the following:

1. Apple II system including mother printed circuit board with specified amount of RAM memory and 8K of ROM memory, switching power supply, keyboard, and case assembly.
2. Accessories Box including the following:
 - a. This manual including warranty card.
 - b. Pair of Game Paddles
 - c. A.C. Power Cord
 - d. Cassette tape with "Breakout" on one side and "Color Demos" on the other side.
 - e. Cassette recorder interface cable (miniature phone jack type)
3. If you purchased a 16K or larger system, your accessory box should also contain:
 - a. 16K Startrek game cassette with High Resolution Graphics Demo ("HIRES") on the flipside.
 - b. Applesoft Floating Point Basic Language Cassette with an example program on the flip side.
 - c. Applesoft reference manual
4. In addition other items such as a vinyl carrying case or hobby board peripheral may have been included if specifically ordered as "extras".

Notify your dealer or Apple Computer, Inc. immediately if you are missing any items.

Warranty Registration Card

Fill this card out immediately and completely and mail to Apple in order to register for one year warranty and to be placed on owners club mailing list. Your Apple II's serial number is located on the bottom near the rear edge. Your model number is:

A2S00MMX

Where MM is the amount of memory you purchased. For Example:

A2S0008X

is an 8K Byte Apple II system.

Check for Damage

Inspect the outside case of your Apple for shipping damage. Gently lift up on the top-rear of the lid of the case to release the lid snaps and remove the lid. Inspect the inside. Nothing should be loose and rattling around. Gently press down on each integrated circuit to make sure that each is still firmly seated in its socket. Plug in your game paddles into the Apple II board at the socket marked "GAME I/O" at location J14. See hardware section of this manual for additional detail. The white dot on the connector should be forwarded. Be careful as this connector is fragile. Replace the lid and press on the back top of it to re-snap it into place.

Power Up

First, make sure that the power ON/OFF switch on the rear power supply panel on your Apple II is in the "OFF" position. Connect the A.C. power cord to the Apple and to a 3 wire 120 volt A.C. outlet. Make sure that you connect the third wire to ground if you have only a two conductor house wiring system. This ground is for your safety if there is an internal failure in the Apple power supply, minimizes the chance of static damage to the Apple, and minimizes RFI problems.

Connect a cable from the video output jack on the back of the Apple to a TV set with a direct video input jack. This type of set is commonly called a "Monitor". If your set does not have a direct video input, it is possible to modify your existing set. Write for Apple's Application note on this. Optionally you may connect the Apple to the antenna terminals of your TV if you use a modulator. See additional details in the hardware section of this manual under "Interfacing with the Home TV".

Now turn on the power switch on the back of the Apple. The indicator light (it's not a switch) on the keyboard should now be ON. If not, check A.C. connections. Press and release the "Reset" button on the keyboard. The following should happen: the Apple's internal speaker should beep, an asterisk ("*") prompt character should appear at the lower left hand corner of your TV, and a flashing white square should appear just to the right of the asterisk. The rest of the TV screen will be garbage.

If the Apple beeps and garbage appears but you cannot see an "*" and the cursor, the horizontal or vertical height settings on the TV need to be adjusted. Now depress and release the "ESC" key, then hold down the "SHIFT" key while depressing and releasing the P key. This should clear your TV screen to all black. Now depress and release the "RESET" key again. The "*" prompt character and the cursor should return to the lower left of your TV screen.

Apple Speaks Several Languages

The prompt character indicates which language your Apple is currently in. The current prompt character, an asterisk ("*") indicates that you are in the "Monitor" language, a powerful machine level language for advanced programmers. Details of this language are in the "Firmware" section of this manual.

Apple Integer BASIC

Apple also contains a high level English oriented language called Integer BASIC, permanently in its ROM memory. To switch to this language hold down the "CTRL" key while depressing and releasing the "B" key. This is called a control-B function and is similar to the use of the shift key in that it indicates a different function to the Apple. Control key functions are not displayed on your TV screen but the Apple still gets the message. Now depress and release the "RETURN" key to tell Apple that you have finished typing a line on the keyboard. A right facing arrow (">") called a carrot will now appear as the prompt character to indicate that Apple is now in its Integer BASIC language mode.

Running Your First and Second Program

Read through the next three sections that include:

1. Loading a BASIC program Tape.
2. Breakout Game Tape
3. Color Demo Tape

Then load and run each program tape. Additional information on Apple II's Integer BASIC is in the next section of this manual.

Running 16K Startrek

If you have 16K Bytes or larger memory in your Apple, you will also receive a "STARTREK" game tape. Load this program just as you did the previous two, but before you "RUN" it, type in "HIMEM: 16384" to set exactly where in memory this program is to run.

LOADING A PROGRAM TAPE

INTRODUCTION

This application note describes a procedure for loading BASIC programs successfully into the Apple II. The process of loading a program is divided into three sections; System Checkout, Loading a Tape and What to do when you have Loading Problems. They are discussed below.

When loading a tape, the Apple II needs a signal of about 2 1/2 to 5 volts peak-to-peak. Commonly, this signal is obtained from the "Monitor" or "earphone" output jack on the tape recorder. Inside most tape recorders, this signal is derived from the tape recorder's speaker. One can take advantage of this fact when setting the volume levels. Using an Apple Computer pre-recorded tape, and with all cables disconnected, play the tape and adjust the volume to a loud but un-distorted level. You will find that this volume setting will be quite close to the optimum.

Some tape recorders (mostly those intended for use with Hi-Fi sets) do not have an "earphone" or high-level "monitor" output. These machines have outputs labeled "line output" for connection to the Hi-Fi power amplifier. The signal levels at these outputs are too low for the Apple II in most cases.

Cassette tape recorders in the \$40 - \$50 range generally have ALC (automatic level control) for recording from the microphone input. This feature is useful since the user doesn't have to set any volume controls to obtain a good recording. If you are using a recorder which must be adjusted, it will have a level meter or a little light to warn of excessive recording levels. Set the recording level to just below the level meter's maximum, or to just a dim indication on the level lamp. Listen to the recorded tape after you've saved a program to ensure that the recording is "loud and clear".

Apple Computer has found that an occasional tape recorder will not function properly when both Input and Output cables are plugged in at the same time. This problem has been traced to a ground loop in the tape recorder itself which prevents making a good recording when saving a program. The easiest solution is to unplug the "monitor" output when recording. This ground loop does not influence the system when loading a pre-recorded tape.

Tape recorder head alignment is the most common source of tape recorder problems. If the playback head is skewed, then high frequency information on pre-recorded tapes is lost and all sorts of errors will result. To confirm that head alignment is the problem, write a short program in BASIC. >10 END is sufficient. Then save this program. And then rewind and load the program. If you can accomplish this easily but cannot load pre-recorded tapes, then head alignment problems are indicated.

Apple Computer pre-recorded tapes are made on the highest quality professional duplicating machines, and these tapes may be used by the service technician to align the tape recorder's heads. The frequency response of the tape recorder should be fairly good; and 6 KHz tone should be not more than 3 db down from a 1 KHz tone, and a 9 KHz tone should be no more than 9 db down. Note that recordings you have made yourself with mis-aligned heads may not play properly with the heads properly aligned. If you made a recording with a skewed record head, then the tiny magnetic fields on the tape will be skewed as well, thus playing back properly only when the skew on the tape exactly matches the skew of the tape recorder's heads. If you have saved valuable programs with a skewed tape recorder, then borrow another tape recorder, load the programs with the old tape recorder into the Apple, then save them on the borrowed machine. Then have your tape recorder properly aligned.

Listening to the tape can help solve other problems as well. Flaws in the tape, excessive speed variations, and distortion can be detected this way. Saving a program several times in a row is good insurance against tape flaws. One thing to listen for is a good clean tone lasting for at least 3 1/2 seconds is needed by the computer to "set up" for proper loading. The Apple puts out this tone for about 10 seconds when saving a program, so you normally have 6 1/2 seconds of leeway. If the playback volume is too high, you may pick up tape noise before getting to the set-up tone. Try a lower playback volume.

SYSTEM CHECKOUT

A quick check of the Apple II computer system will help you spot any problems that might be due to improperly placed or missing connections between the Apple II, the cassette interface, the Video display, and the game paddles. This checkout procedure takes just a few seconds to perform and is a good way of insuring that everything is properly connected before the power is turned on.

1. POWER TO APPLE - check that the AC power cord is plugged into an appropriate wall socket, which includes a "true" ground and is connected to the Apple II.
2. CASSETTE INTERFACE - check that at least one cassette cable double ended with miniature phone tip jacks is connected between the Apple II cassette Input port and the tape recorder's MONITOR plug socket.
3. VIDEO DISPLAY INTERFACE -
 - a) for a video monitor - check that a cable connects the monitor to the Apple's video output port.
 - b) for a standard television - check that an adapter (RF modulator) is plugged into the Apple II (either in the video output (K 14) or the video auxillary socket (J148), and that a cable runs between the television and the Adapter's output socket.
4. GAME PADDLE INTERFACE - if paddles are to be used, check that they are connected into the Game I/O connector (J14) on the right-hand side of the Apple II mainboard.
5. POWER ON - flip on the power switch in back of the Apple II, the "power" indicator on the keyboard will light. Also make sure the video monitor (or TV set) is turned on.

After the Apple II system has been powered up and the video display presents a random matrix of question marks or other text characters the following procedure can be followed to load a BASIC program tape:

1. Hit the RESET key.
An asterick, "*" should appear on the lefthand side of the screen below the random text pattern. A flashing white cursor will appear to the right of the asterick.
2. Hold down the CTRL key, depress and release the B key, then depress the "RETURN" key and release the "CTRL" key. A right facing arrow should appear on the lefthand side of the screen with a flashing cursor next to it. If it doesn't, repeat steps 1 and 2.
3. Type in the word "LOAD" on the keyboard. You should see the word in between the right facing arrow and the flashing cursor. Do not depress the "RETURN" key yet.
4. Insert the program cassette into the tape recorder and rewind it.
5. If not already set, adjust the Volume control to 50-70% maximum. If present, adjust the Tone control to 80-100% maximum.

6. Start the tape recorder in "PLAY" mode and now depress the "RETURN" key on the Apple II.
7. The cursor will disappear and Apple II will beep in a few seconds when it finds the beginning of the program. If an error message is flashed on the screen, proceed through the steps listed in the Tape Problem section of this paper.
8. A second beep will sound and the flashing cursor will reappear after the program has been successfully loaded into the computer.
9. Stop the tape recorder. You may want to rewind the program tape at this time.
10. Type in the word "RUN" and depress the "RETURN" key.

The steps in loading a program have been completed and if everything has gone satisfactorily the program will be operating now.

LOADING PROBLEMS

Occasionally, while attempting to load a BASIC program Apple II beeps and a memory full error is written on the screen. At this time you might wonder what is wrong with the computer, with the program tape, or with the cassette recorder. Stop. This is the time when you need to take a moment and checkout the system rather than haphazardly attempting to resolve the loading problem. Thoughtful action taken here will speed in a program's entry. If you were able to successfully turn on the computer, reset it, and place it into BASIC then the Apple II is probably operating correctly. Before describing a procedure for resolving this loading problem, a discussion of what a memory full error is in order.

The memory full error displayed upon loading a program indicates that not enough (RAM) memory workspace is available to contain the incoming data. How does the computer know this? Information contained in the beginning of the program tape declares the record length of the program. The computer reads this data first and checks it with the amount of free memory. If adequate workspace is available program loading continues. If not, the computer beeps to indicate a problem, displays a memory full error statement, stops the loading procedure, and returns command of the system to the keyboard. Several reasons emerge as the cause of this problem.

Memory Size too Small

Attempting to load a 16K program into a 4K Apple II will generate this kind of error message. It is called loading too large of a program. The solution is straight forward: only load appropriately sized programs into suitably sized systems.

Another possible reason for an error message is that the memory pointers which indicate the bounds of available memory have been preset to a smaller capacity. This could have happened through previous usage of the "HIMEN:" and "LOMEN:" statements. The solution is to reset the pointers by BC (CTRL B) command. Hold the CTRL key down, depress and release the B key, then depress the RETURN key and release the CTRL key. This will reset the system to maximum capacity.

Cassette Recorder Inadjustment

If the Volume and Tone controls on the cassette recorder are not properly set a memory full error can occur. The solution is to adjust the Volume to 50-70% maximum and the Tone (if it exists) to 80-100% maximum.*

A second common recorder problem is skewed head azimuth. When the tape head is not exactly perpendicular to the edges of the magnetic tape some of the high frequency data on tape can be skipped. This causes missing bits in the data sent to the computer. Since the first data read is record length an error here could cause a memory full error to be generated because the length of the record is inaccurate. The solution: adjust tape head azimuth. It is recommended that a competent technician at a local stereo shop perform this operation.

Often times new cassette recorders will not need this adjustment.

*Apple Computer Inc. has tested many types of cassette recorders and so far the Panasonic RQ-309 DS (less than \$40.00) has an excellent track record for program loading.

Tape Problems

A memory full error can result from unintentional noise existing in a program tape. This can be the result of a program tape starting on its header which sometimes causes a glitch going from a nonmagnetic to magnetic recording surface and is interpreted by the computer as the record length. Or, the program tape can be defective due to false erasure, imperfections in the tape, or physical damage. The solution is to take a moment and listen to the tape. If any imperfections are heard then replacement of the tape is called for. Listening to the tape assures that you know what a "good" program tape sounds like. If you have any questions about this please contact your local dealer or Apple for assistance.

If noise or a glitch is heard at the beginning of a tape advance the tape to the start of the program and re-Load the tape.

Dealing with the Loading Problem

With the understanding of what a memory full error is an efficient way of dealing with program tape loading problems is to perform the following procedure:

1. Check the program tape for its memory requirements.
Be sure that you have a large enough system.

2. Before loading a program reset the memory pointers with the B_C (control B) command.
3. In special cases have the tape head azimuth checked and adjusted.
4. Check the program tape by listening to it.
 - a) Replace it if it is defective, or
 - b) start it at the beginning of the program.
5. Then re-LOAD the program tape into the Apple II.

In most cases if the preceeding is followed a good tape load will result.

UNSOLVED PROBLEMS

If you are having any unsolved loading problems, contact your nearest local dealer or Apple Computer Inc..

BREAKOUT GAME TAPE

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

Breakout is a color graphics game for the Apple II computer. The object of the game is to "knock-out" all 160 colored bricks from the playing field by hitting them with the bouncing ball. You direct the ball by hitting it with a paddle on the left side of the screen. You control the paddle with one of the Apple's Game Paddle controllers. But watch out: you can only miss the ball five times!

There are eight columns of bricks. As you penetrate through the wall the point value of the bricks increases. A perfect game is 720 points; after five balls have been played the computer will display your score and a rating such as "Very Good". "Terrible!", etc. After ten hits of the ball, its speed will double, making the game more difficult. If you break through to the back wall, the ball will rebound back and forth, racking up points.

Breakout is a challenging game that tests your concentration, dexterity, and skill.

REQUIREMENTS

This program will fit into a 4K or greater system.
BASIC is the programming language used.

PLAYING BREAKOUT

1. Load Breakout game following instructions in the "Loading a BASIC Program from Tape" section of this manual.
2. Enter your name and depress RETURN key.
3. If you want standard BREAKOUT colors type in Y or Yes and hit RETURN. The game will then begin.
4. If the answer to the previous questions was N or No then the available colors will be displayed. The player will be asked to choose colors, represented by a number from 0 to 15, for background, even bricks, odd bricks, paddle and ball colors. After these have been chosen the game will begin.

5. At the end of the game you will be asked if they want to play again. A Y or Yes response will start another game. A N or No will exit from the program.

NOTE: A game paddle (150k ohm potentiometer) must be connected to PDL (0) of the Game I/O connector for this game.

COLOR DEMO TAPE

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

COLOR DEMO demonstrates some of the Apple II video graphics capabilities. In it are ten examples: Lines, Cross, Weaving, Tunnel, Circle, Spiral, Tones, Spring, Hyperbola, and Color Bars. These examples produce various combinations of visual patterns in fifteen colors on a monitor or television screen. For example, Spiral combines colorgraphics with tones to produce some amusing patterns. Tones illustrates various sounds that you can produce with the two inch Apple speaker. These examples also demonstrate how the paddle inputs (PDL(X)) can be used to control the audio and visual displays. Ideas from this program can be incorporated into other programs with a little modification.

REQUIREMENTS

4K or greater Apple II system, color monitor or television, and paddles are needed to use this program. BASIC is the programming language used.

BREAKOUT GAME PROGRAM LISTING

PROGRAM LISTING

```

5 GOTO 15
10 Q=(POL(0)-28)/6: IF Q=0 THEN
  Q=0: IF Q=34 THEN Q=34: COLOR=
  0: VLIN Q,Q+5 AT 0: COLOR=A:
  IF P>Q THEN 175: IF Q THEN
  VLIN Q,Q-1 AT 0:P=Q: RETURN

15 DIM A$(15),B$(10): P=1:B=12:
  C=9:D=6:E=15: TEXT: CALL
  -936: VTAB 4: TAB 10: PRINT
  "=== BREAKOUT ===": PRINT
20 PRINT "  OBJECT IS TO DESTROY
  ALL BRICKS": PRINT: INPUT
  "HI, WHAT'S YOUR NAME? ",A$

25 PRINT "STANDARD COLORS ":A$
  : INPUT "Y/N?",B$: GR: CALL
  -936: IF B$(1,1)>"N" THEN 40
  : FOR I=0 TO 39: COLOR=I/2+
  (1/32): VLIN Q,Q AT 1
30 NEXT I: POKE 34,28: PRINT:
  PRINT: PRINT: FOR I=0 TO "
  15: VTAB 21+MOD 2: TAB 1+
  I+1: PRINT I: NEXT I: POKE
  34,22: VTAB 24: PRINT: PRINT
  "BACKGROUND":
35 GOSUB 95:B=E: PRINT "EVEN BRICK"
  : GOSUB 95:B=E: PRINT "ODD BRIC
  K": GOSUB 95:C=E: PRINT "PADDLE
  ": GOSUB 95:D=E: PRINT "BALL"
  : GOSUB 95
40 POKE 34,28: COLOR=A: FOR I=
  0 TO 39: VLIN Q,Q AT 1: NEXT
  I: FOR I=20 TO 34 STEP 2: TAB
  I+1: PRINT I/2-9: COLOR=B:
  VLIN Q,Q AT 1: COLOR=C: FOR
  J=1 MOD 4 TO 39 STEP 4
45 VLIN J,J+1 AT 1: NEXT J,I: TAB
  5: PRINT "SCORE = 0": PRINT
  : PRINT: POKE 34,21: S=0:P=
  5:L=5:X=19:Y=19:L=6
50 COLOR=A: PLOT X,Y:Q=A:19:Y=
  RND(128):Y=-1:Y=RND(5)-
  2:L=L-1: IF L<1 THEN 120: TAB
  6: IF L>1 THEN PRINT L: " BALLS L
  EFT"
55 IF L=1 THEN PRINT "LAST BALL, "
  :A$: PRINT: FOR I=1 TO 100
  : GOSUB 10: NEXT I:M=1:N=0
60 J=Y+W: IF J>0 AND J<120 THEN
  65:W=-W:J=Y: FOR I=1 TO 6:K=
  PEEK(-16336): NEXT I
65 I=X+W: IF I<0 THEN 100: GOSUB
  170: COLOR=A:K=J/3: IF I>39
  THEN 75: IF SCRAM1,K)=R THEN
  85: IF I THEN 100:N=M+1:Y=C
  N/5+1:W=(Y-P)*2-5:M=1
70 Z=PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )+PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )+PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )+PEEK(-16336): GOTO 85
75 FOR I=1 TO 6:K=PEEK(-16336
  ): NEXT I:1=X:M=0
80 V=-Y
85 PLOT X,Y/3: COLOR=E: PLOT I,
  K:X=1:Y=J: GOTO 60
90 PRINT "INVALID. REENTER":
95 INPUT " COLOR (0 TO 15)",E:
  IF E<0 OR E>15 THEN 90: RETURN

100 IF N THEN Y=ABS(Y): VLIN
  K/2+2,K/2+2+1 AT 1:5=9+I/2-
  9: VTAB 21: TAB 10: PRINT S
105 Q=PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )+PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )+PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )+PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )+PEEK(-16336)-PEEK(-16336
  )
110 IF S<720 THEN 80
115 PRINT "CONGRATULATIONS, ",A$
  : " YOU WIN!": GOTO 155
120 PRINT "YOUR SCORE OF ",S," IS "
  : GOTO 125+(S/100)*5
125 PRINT "TERRIBLE!": GOTO 165
130 PRINT "LOUZY.": GOTO 165
135 PRINT "POOR.": GOTO 165
140 PRINT "FAIR.": GOTO 165
145 PRINT "GOOD.": GOTO 165
150 PRINT "VERY GOOD.": GOTO 165
155 PRINT "EXCELLENT.": GOTO 165
160 PRINT "NEARLY PERFECT."
165 PRINT "ANOTHER GAME ",A$," (Y/N)
  ": INPUT A$: IF A$(1,1)="Y"
  THEN 25: TEXT: CALL -936:
  VTAB 10: TAB 10: PRINT "GAME OV
  ER": END
170 Q=(POL(0)-28)/6: IF Q=0 THEN
  Q=0: IF Q=34 THEN Q=34: COLOR=
  0: VLIN Q,Q+5 AT 0: COLOR=A:
  IF P>Q THEN 175: IF Q THEN
  VLIN Q,Q-1 AT 0:P=Q: RETURN

175 IF P=Q THEN RETURN: IF Q=34
  THEN VLIN Q,Q+5 AT 0:P=Q:
  RETURN
180 FOR I=1 TO 39:Q=PEEK(-16336
  ): NEXT I: GOTO 50

```

COLOR DEMO PROGRAM LISTING

PROGRAM LISTING

```

10 DIM C(4): POKE 2,173: POKE
   3,48: POKE 4,192: POKE 5,155
   : POKE 6,8: POKE 7,32: POKE
   8,168: POKE 9,252: POKE 10,
   165: POKE 11,1: POKE 12,288

20 POKE 13,4: POKE 14,198: POKE
   15,24: POKE 16,240: POKE 17
   ,5: POKE 18,198: POKE 19,1:
   POKE 20,76: POKE 21,2: POKE
   22,8: POKE 23,96

30 TEXT: CALL -936: VTab 4: TAB
   8: PRINT "4K COLOR DEMOS": PRINT
   : PRINT "1 LINES": PRINT "2 CROS
   5": PRINT "3 WEAVING"

40 PRINT "4 TUNNEL": PRINT "5 CIRCUL
   E": PRINT "6 SPIRAL **": PRINT
   "7 TONES **": PRINT "8 SPRING"

50 PRINT "9 HYPERBOLA": PRINT
   "10 COLOR BARS": PRINT: PRINT
   " ** NEEDS PDL(8) CONNECTED"
   : PRINT

60 PRINT "HIT ANY KEY FOR NEW DEMO"
   :2=0: PRINT: INPUT "WHICH DEMO
   9 ",I: GOTO 1: IF I=0 AND I=11
   THEN GOTO 100+1: GOTO 30

70 INPUT "WHICH DEMO WOULD YOU LIKE
   ",I: GOTO 1: IF I AND 1629 THEN
   GOTO 100+1: GOTO 30

100 I=1+I MOD 79:J=1+(I/39)*(79
   -1-I): GOSUB 2000: GOSUB 10000
   : GOTO 100

200 I=1+I MOD 39:J=1: GOSUB 2000
   :J=39-I: GOSUB 2000: GOSUB
   10000: GOTO 200

300 J=J+1:J=J MOD 22+1: FOR I=1
   TO 1255: COLOR=I MOD 347: PLOT
   (2+I) MOD 37,(3+I) MOD 35: NEXT
   I: GOSUB 10000: GOTO 300

400 FOR I=1 TO 4:(C(I)=RND(16)
   : NEXT I

410 FOR I=3 TO 1 STEP -1:(C(I+1)
   =C(I): NEXT I:(C(1)=RND(16)
   ): FOR I=1 TO 3: FOR J=1 TO
   4

420 COLOR=C(J):L=J*5+14+I*K*39-
   L: HLINE K,L AT K: VLINE K,L AT
   L: HLINE K,L AT L: VLINE K,L AT
   K: NEXT J,I: GOSUB 10000: GOTO
   410

500 Z=29: GOTO 1000

600 COLOR=RND(16): FOR I=0 TO
   18 STEP 2:J=39-I: VLINE I,J AT
   I: GOSUB 640: VLINE I,J AT J:
   GOSUB 640

610 HLINE I+2,J AT J: GOSUB 640:
   VLINE I+2,J AT I+2: GOSUB 640
   : NEXT I

620 COLOR=RND(16): FOR I=10 TO
   9 STEP -2:J=39-I: VLINE I+2,
   J AT I+2: GOSUB 640: HLINE I+
   2,J AT I: GOSUB 640

630 VLINE I,J AT J: GOSUB 640: HLINE
   I,J AT I: GOSUB 640: NEXT I:
   GOSUB 10000: GOTO 600

640 K=1+I/7:L=K*K*5+K*25+79:L=32767
   /L*(PDL(8)/10): POKE 0,K:
   POKE 1,L MOD 256: POKE 24,
   L/256+1: CALL 2: RETURN

700 I=RND(39)+3:J=I+5+I*26+
   78:K=32767/J*(PDL(8)/10):
   POKE 0,I: POKE 1,K MOD 256
   : POKE 24,(K/255)+1: CALL 2
   : GOSUB 10000: GOTO 700

800 X=3:A=1000:P=A:L=20:M=4:Y=8
   :J=1: COLOR=6: VLINE 0,39 AT
   4: COLOR=9: GOSUB 300: COLOR=
   12: VLINE 5,M-2 AT X

810 M=2+A-P-A/M: COLOR=0: GOSUB
   800: VLINE 5,39 AT X:X=X+1: IF
   X/39 THEN 820:X=3: VLINE 5,39
   AT 1: VLINE 5,39 AT 2

820 P=A:A=M:Y=A/100: COLOR=12: GOSUB
   800: COLOR=5: VLINE 5,M-2 AT
   X: COLOR=15: PLOT X-2,M: FOR
   I=0 TO J: NEXT I: GOSUB 10000
   : GOTO 810

830 M=L-Y:L1=M-1:L2=M+1: VLINE L1,
   L2 AT X-1: VLINE L1,L2 AT X:
   VLINE L1,L2 AT X+1: RETURN

900 I=1+I MOD 15: FOR T=0 TO 32
   : FOR X=8 TO 39: COLOR=I+C*ABS
   ((20-X)-Z)*4: TAB (30-Y)-Z/25
   : PLOT X,Y: NEXT X,Y: GOSUB
   10000: GOTO 900

1000 CALL -936

1010 J=1+J MOD 32: COLOR=J/2: VLINE
   0,29 AT 3+J: VTab 21+(J/2) MOD
   2: TAB 3+J: IF J MOD 2 THEN
   PRINT J/2: GOSUB 10000: GOTO
   1010

2000 COLOR=RND(15): HLINE 0,39 AT
   J: COLOR=RND(16): VLINE 0,
   39 AT J: RETURN

10000 IF PEEK(-16384)/128 THEN RETURN
   : POKE -16382,0: POP: GOTO
   30

```


THIS IS A SHORT DESCRIPTION OF HOW TO PLAY STARTREK ON THE APPLE COMPUTER.

THE UNIVERSE IS MADE UP OF 64 QUADRANTS IN AN 8 BY 8 MATRIX.
THE QUADRANT IN WHICH YOU 'THE ENTERPRISE' ARE, IS IN WHITE,
AND A BLOW UP OF THAT QUADRANT IS FOUND IN THE LOWER LEFT
CORNER. YOUR SPACE SHIP STATUS IS FOUND IN A TABLE TO
THE RIGHT SIDE OF THE QUADRANT BLOW UP.

THIS IS A SEARCH AND DESTROY MISSION. THE OBJECT IS TO LONG-RANGE SENSE FOR INFORMATION AS TO WHERE KLINGONS (K) ARE, MOVE TO THAT QUADRANT, AND DESTROY.

NUMBERS DISPLAYED FOR EACH QUADRANT DENOTE:

- * OF STARS IN THE ONES PLACE
- * OF BASES IN THE TENS PLACE
- * OF KLINGONS IN THE HUNDREDS PLACE

AT ANY TIME DURING THE GAME, FOR INSTANCE BEFORE ONE TOTALLY RUNS OUT OF ENERGY, OR NEEDS TO REGENERATE ALL SYSTEMS, ONE MOVES TO A QUADRANT WHICH INCLUDES A BASE, IONS NEXT TO THAT BASE (B) AT WHICH TIME THE BASE SELF-DESTRUCTS AND THE ENTERPRISE (E) HAS ALL SYSTEMS "GO" AGAIN.

TO PLAY:

1. THE COMMANDS CAN BE OBTAINED BY TYPING A "0" (ZERO) AND RETURN.
THEY ARE:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. PROPULSION | 2. REGENERATE |
| 3. LONG RANGE SENSORS | 4. PHASERS |
| 5. PHOTON TORPEDOES | 6. GALAXY RECORD |
| 7. COMPUTER | 8. PROBE |
| 9. SHIELD ENERGY | 10. DAMAGE REPORT |

2. THE COMANDS ARE INVOKED BY TYPING THE NUMBER REFERRING TO THEM FOLLOWED BY A "RETURN".

FOLLOWED BY A RETURN.
 A. IF RESPONSE IS 1 THE COMPUTER WILL ASK WARP OR IDN AND
 EXPECTS 1 IF ONE WANTS TO TRAVEL IN THE GALAXY
 BETWEEN QUADRANTS AND AN 'I' IF ONE WANTS ONLY
 INTERNAL QUADRANT TRAVEL.
 DURATION OR WARP FACTOR IS THE NUMBER OF SPACES OR
 QUADRANTS THE ENTERPRISE WILL MOVE.
 COURSE IS COMPASS READING IN DEGREES FOR THE DESI-
 RED DESTINATION.

- B. A 2 REGENERATES THE ENERGY AT THE EXPENSE OF TIME.
C. A 3 GIVES THE CONTENTS OF THE IMMEDIATE ADJACENT QUADRANTS.
THE GALAXY IS WRAP-AROUND IN ALL DIRECTIONS.
D. 4 FIRES PHASERS AT THE EXPENSE OF AVAILABLE ENERGY.

- E. 5 INITIATES A SET OF QUESTIONS FOR TORPEDO FIRING.

THEY CAN BE FIRED AUTOMATICALLY IF THEY HAVE BEEN LOCKED ON TARGET WHILE IN THE COMPUTER MODE, OR MAY BE FIRED MANUALLY IF THE TRAJECTORY ANGLE IS KNOWN.

- F. 6, 8 AND 10 ALL GIVE INFORMATION ABOUT THE STATUS OF THE SHIP AND ITS ENVIRONMENT.

- G. 9 SETS THE SHIELD ENERGY/AVAILABLE ENERGY RATIO.

- H. 11 ASKS FOR INFORMATION ON LOADING AND UNLOADING OF PHOTON TORPEDOES AT THE EXPENSE OF AVAILABLE ENERGY. THE ANSWER SHOULD BE A SIGNED NUMBER, FOR EX +5 OR -2.

- I. 7 ENTERS A COMPUTER WHICH WILL RESPOND TO THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS:

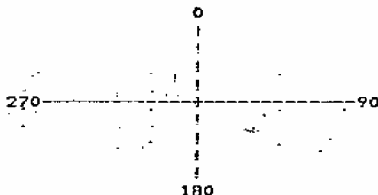
- ```

1. COMPUTE COURSE 2. LOCK PHASERS
3. LOCK PHOTON TORPEDOES
4. LOCK COURSE 5. COMPUTE TREJECTORY
6. STATUS 7. RETURN TO COMMAND MODE

```

-IN THE FIRST FIVE ONE WILL HAVE TO GIVE COORDINATES.  
COORDINATES ARE GIVEN IN MATHEMATICAL NOTATION WITH  
THE EXCEPTION THAT THE 'Y' VALUE IS GIVEN FIRST.  
AN EXAMPLE WOULD BE 'Y,X'

**COURSE OR TRAJECTORY:**



THIS EXPLANATION WAS WRITTEN BY ELWOOD  
NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR  
ERRORS

## LOADING THE HI-RES DEMO TAPE

### PROCEDURE

1. Power up system - turn the AC power switch in the back of the Apple II on. You should see a random matrix of question marks and other text characters. If you don't, consult the operator's manual for system checkout procedures.
2. Hit the RESET key. On the left hand side of the screen you should see an asterisk and a flashing cursor next to it below the text matrix.
3. Insert the HI-RES demo tape into the cassette and rewind it. Check Volume (50-70%) and Tone (80-100%) settings.
4. Type in "C00.FFFR" on the Apple II keyboard. This is the address range of the high resolution machine language subprogram. It extends from \$C00 to \$FFF. The R tells the computer to read in the data. Do not depress the "RETURN" key yet.
5. Start the tape recorder in playback mode and depress the "RETURN" key. The flashing cursor disappears.
6. A beep will sound after the program has been read in. STOP the tape recorder. Do not rewind the program tape yet.
7. Hold down the "CTRL" key, depress and release the B key, then depress the "RETURN" key and release the "CTRL" key. You should see a right facing arrow and a flashing cursor. The BC command places the Apple into BASIC initializing the memory pointers.
8. Type in "LOAD", restart the tape recorder in playback mode and hit the "RETURN" key. The flashing cursor disappears. This begins the loading of the BASIC subprogram of the HI-RES demo tape.
9. A beep will sound to indicate the program is being loaded.

10. A second beep will sound, and the right facing arrow will reappear with the flashing cursor. STOP the tape recorder. Rewind the tape.
11. Type in "HIMEM:8192" and hit the "RETURN" key. This sets up memory for high resolution graphics.
12. Type in "RUN" and hit the "RETURN" key. The screen should clear and momentarily a HI-RES demo menu table should appear. The loading sequence is now completed.

#### SUMMARY OF HI-RES DEMO TAPE LOADING

##### PROCEDURE:

1. RESET
2. Type in C00.FFFR
3. Start tape recorder, hit RETURN
4. Asterick or flashing cursor reappear  
BC (CTRL B) into BASIC
5. Type in "LOAD", hit RETURN
6. BASIC prompt (7) and flashing cursor reappear. Type in "HIMEM:8192", hit RETURN
7. Type in "RUN", hit RETURN
8. STOP tape recorder, rewind tape.

## Apple II Integer BASIC

### CONTENTS

1. BASIC Commands
2. BASIC Operators
3. BASIC Functions
4. BASIC Statements
5. Special Control and Editing
6. Table A - Graphics Colors
7. Special Controls and Features
8. BASIC Error Messages
9. Simplified Memory Map
10. Data Read/Save Subroutines
11. Simple Tone Subroutines
12. High Resolution Graphics
13. Additional BASIC Program Examples

## BASIC COMMANDS

Commands are executed immediately; they do not require line numbers. Most Statements (see Basic Statements Section) may also be used as commands. Remember to press Return key after each command so that Apple knows that you have finished that line. Multiple commands (as opposed to statements) on same line separated by a " : " are NOT allowed.

### COMMAND NAME

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>AUTO</u> <i>num</i>        | Sets automatic line numbering mode. Starts at line number <i>num</i> and increments line numbers by 10. To exit AUTO mode, type a control X*, then type the letters "MAN" and press the return key.                                                                |
| <u>AUTO</u> <i>num1, num2</i> | Same as above except increments line numbers by number <i>num2</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <u>CLR</u>                    | Clears current BASIC variables; undimensions arrays. Program is unchanged.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <u>CON</u>                    | Continues program execution after a stop from a control C*. Does not change variables.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <u>DEL</u> <i>num1</i>        | Deletes line number <i>num1</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <u>DEL</u> <i>num1, num2</i>  | Deletes program from line number <i>num1</i> through line number <i>num2</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <u>DSP</u> <i>var</i>         | Sets debug mode that will display variable <i>var</i> every-time that it is changed along with the line number that caused the change. (NOTE: RUN command clears DSP mode so that DSP command is effective only if program is continued by a CON or GOTO command.) |
| <u>HIMEM:</u> <i>expr</i>     | Sets highest memory location for use by BASIC at location specified by expression <i>expr</i> in decimal.<br>HIMEM: may not be increased without destroying program.<br>HIMEM: is automatically set at maximum RAM memory when BASIC is entered by a control B*.   |
| <u>GOTO</u> <i>expr</i>       | Causes immediate jump to line number specified by expression <i>expr</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <u>GR</u>                     | Sets mixed color graphics display mode. Clears screen to black. Resets scrolling window. Displays 40x40 squares in 15 colors on top of screen and 4 lines of text at bottom.                                                                                       |
| <u>LIST</u>                   | Lists entire program on screen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <u>LIST</u> <i>num1</i>       | Lists program line number <i>num1</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <u>LIST</u> <i>num1, num2</i> | Lists program line number <i>num1</i> through line number <i>num2</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                            |

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>LOAD</u> <i>expr.</i>  | Reads (Loads) a BASIC program from cassette tape. Start tape recorder before hitting return key. Two beeps and a ">" indicate a good load. "ERR" or "MEM" FULL ERR" message indicates a bad tape or poor recorder performance. |
| <u>LOMEM:</u> <i>expr</i> | Similar to HIMEM: except sets lowest memory location available to BASIC. Automatically set at 2048 when BASIC is entered with a control B*. Moving LOMEM: destroys current variable values.                                    |
| <u>MAN</u>                | Clears AUTO line numbering mode to all manual line numbering after a control C* or control X*.                                                                                                                                 |
| <u>NEW</u>                | Clears (Scratches) current BASIC program.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <u>NO DSP</u> <i>var</i>  | Clears DSP mode for variable <i>var</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <u>NO TRACE</u>           | Clears TRACE mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <u>RUN</u>                | Clears variables to zero, undimensions all arrays and executes program starting at lowest statement line number.                                                                                                               |
| <u>RUN</u> <i>expr</i>    | Clears variables and executes program starting at line number specified by expression <i>expr</i> .                                                                                                                            |
| <u>SAVE</u>               | Stores (saves) a BASIC program on a cassette tape. Start tape recorder in record mode prior to hitting return key.                                                                                                             |
| <u>TEXT</u>               | Sets all text mode. Screen is formatted to display alpha-numeric characters on 24 lines of 40 characters each. TEXT resets scrolling window to maximum.                                                                        |
| <u>TRACE</u>              | Sets debug mode that displays line number of each statement as it is executed.                                                                                                                                                 |

\* Control characters such as control X or control C are typed by holding down the CTRL key while typing the specified letter. This is similar to how one holds down the shift key to type capital letters. Control characters are NOT displayed on the screen but are accepted by the computer. For example, type several control G's. We will also use a superscript C to indicate a control character as in X<sup>C</sup>.

## BASIC Operators

| <u>Symbol</u>           | <u>Sample Statement</u>                     | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>Prefix Operators</u> |                                             |                                                                                                                      |
| ( )                     | 10 X= 4*(5 + X)                             | Expressions within parenthesis ( ) are always evaluated first.                                                       |
| +                       | 20 X= +4*5                                  | Optional; +1 times following expression.                                                                             |
| -                       | 30 ALPHA =<br>-(BETA +2)                    | Negation of following expression.                                                                                    |
| NOT                     | 40 IF , NOT B THEN<br>200<br>50 I=NOT NOT I | Logical Negation of following expression;<br>0 if expression is true (non-zero), 1<br>if expression is false (zero). |

## Arithmetic Operators

|     |                                                                             |                                                                                                                            |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| +   | 60 Y = X^3                                                                  | Exponentiate as in $X^3$ . NOTE: ^ is shifted letter N.                                                                    |
| *   | 70 LET DOTS=A*B*N2                                                          | Multiplication. NOTE: Implied multiplication such as (2 + 3)(4) is not allowed thus N2 in example is a variable not N * 2. |
| /   | 80 PRINT GAMMA/S                                                            | Divide                                                                                                                     |
| MOD | 90 5 = 12 MOD 7<br>100 X = X MOD(Y+2)                                       | Modulo: Remainder after division of first expression by second expression.                                                 |
| +   | 110 P = L + G                                                               | Add                                                                                                                        |
| -   | 120 XY4 = H-D                                                               | Subtract                                                                                                                   |
| =   | 130 HEIGHT=15<br>140 LET SIZE=7*5<br>150 A(8) = 2<br>155 ALPHA\$ = "PLEASE" | Assignment operator; assigns a value to a variable. LET is optional                                                        |

## Relational and Logical Operators

The numeric values used in logical evaluation are "true" if non-zero, "false" if zero.

| <u>Symbol</u> | <u>Sample Statement</u>            | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| =             | 160 IF D = E<br>THEN 500           | Expression "equals" expression.                                                                                                                         |
| =             | 170 IF A\$(1,1)=<br>"Y" THEN 500   | String variable "equals" string variable.                                                                                                               |
| # or < >      | 180 IF ALPHA #X*Y<br>THEN 500      | Expression "does not equal" expression.                                                                                                                 |
| #             | 190 IF A\$ # "NO"<br>THEN 500      | String variable "does not equal" string variable. NOTE: If strings are not the same length, they are considered un-equal. < > not allowed with strings. |
| >             | 200 IF A>B<br>THEN GO TO 50        | Expression "is greater than" expression.                                                                                                                |
| <             | 210 IF A+1<B-5<br>THEN 100         | Expression "is less than" expression.                                                                                                                   |
| >=            | 220 IF A>=B<br>THEN 100            | Expression "is greater than or equal to" expression.                                                                                                    |
| <=            | 230 IF A+1<=B-6<br>THEN 200        | Expression "is less than or equal to" expression.                                                                                                       |
| AND           | 240 IF A>B AND<br>C<D THEN 200     | Expression 1 "and" expression 2 must both be "true" for statements to be true.                                                                          |
| OR            | 250 IF ALPHA OR<br>BETA+1 THEN 200 | If either expression 1 or expression 2 is "true", statement is "true".                                                                                  |



## BASIC FUNCTIONS

Functions return a numeric result. They may be used as expressions or as part of expressions. PRINT is used for examples only, other statements may be used. Expressions following function name must be enclosed between two parenthesis signs.

### FUNCTION NAME

|                                         |                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ABS ( <i>expr</i> )                     | 300 PRINT ABS(X)                                                                                | Gives absolute value of the expression <i>expr</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| ASC ( <i>str</i> \$)                    | 310 PRINT ASC("BACK")<br>320 PRINT ASC(B\$)<br>330 PRINT ASC(B\$(4,4))<br>335 PRINT ASC(B\$(Y)) | Gives decimal ASCII value of designated string variable <i>str</i> \$. If more than one character is in designated string or sub-string, it gives decimal ASCII value of first character.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| LEN ( <i>str</i> \$)                    | 340 PRINT LEN(B\$)                                                                              | Gives current length of designated string variable <i>str</i> \$. i.e., number of characters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| PDL ( <i>expr</i> )                     | 350 PRINT PDL(X)                                                                                | Gives number between 0 and 255 corresponding to paddle position on game paddle number designated by expression <i>expr</i> and must be legal paddle (0,1,2, or 3) or else 255 is returned.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| PEEK ( <i>expr</i> )                    | 360 PRINT PEEK(X)                                                                               | Gives the decimal value of number stored of decimal memory location specified by expression <i>expr</i> . For MEMORY locations above 32676, use negative number; i.e., HEX location FFF0 is -32751                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| RND ( <i>expr</i> )                     | 370 PRINT RND(X)                                                                                | Gives random number between 0 and (expression <i>expr</i> -1) if expression <i>expr</i> is positive; if minus, it gives random number between 0 and (expression <i>expr</i> +1).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| SCRN( <i>expr</i> 1,<br><i>expr</i> 2). | 380 PRINT SCRN (X1,Y1)                                                                          | Gives color (number between 0 and 15) of screen at horizontal location designated by expression <i>expr</i> 1 and vertical location designated by expression <i>expr</i> 2. Range of expression <i>expr</i> 1 is 0 to 39. Range of expression <i>expr</i> 2 is 0 to 39 if in standard mixed colorgraphics display mode as set by GR command or 0 to 47 if in all color mode set by POKE -16304 ,0: POKE - 16302,0. |
| SGN ( <i>expr</i> )                     | 390 PRINT SGN(X)                                                                                | Gives sign (not sine) of expression <i>expr</i> i.e., -1 if expression <i>expr</i> is negative, zero if zero and +1 if <i>expr</i> is positive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## BASIC STATEMENTS

Each BASIC statement must have a line number between 0 and 32767. Variable names must start with an alpha character and may be any number of alpha-numeric characters up to 100. Variable names may not contain buried any of the following words: AND, AT, MOD, OR, STEP, or THEN. Variable names may not begin with the letters END, LET, or REM. String variables names must end with a \$ (dollar sign). Multiple statements may appear under the same line number if separated by a : (colon) as long as the total number of characters in the line (including spaces) is less than approximately 150 characters. Most statements may also be used as commands. BASIC statements are executed by RUN or GOTO commands.

### NAME

|                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>CALL</u> <i>expr</i>                                                                                  | 10 CALL-936                                                                                                          | Causes execution of a machine level language subroutine at decimal memory location specified by expression <i>expr</i> . Locations above 32767 are specified using negative numbers; i.e., location in example 10 is hexadecimal number \$FC53-                                                                                                                                                 |
| <u>COLOR</u> = <i>expr</i>                                                                               | 30 COLOR=12                                                                                                          | In standard resolution color (GR) graphics mode, this command sets screen TV color to value in expression <i>expr</i> in the range 0 to 15 as described in Table A. Actually expression <i>expr</i> may be in the range 0 to 255 without error message since it is implemented as if it were expression <i>expr</i> MOD 16.                                                                     |
| <u>DIM</u> <i>var1</i> ( <i>expr1</i> )<br><i>str\$</i> ( <i>expr2</i> )<br><i>var2</i> ( <i>expr3</i> ) | 50 DIM A(20):B(10)<br>60 DIM B\$(30)<br>70 DIM C<br>Illegal:<br>80 DIM A(30)<br>Legal:<br>85 DIM C(1000)             | The DIM statement causes APPLE II to reserve memory for the specified variables. For number arrays APPLE reserves approximately 2 times <i>expr</i> bytes of memory limited by available memory. For string arrays - <i>str\$</i> ( <i>expr</i> ) must be in the range of 1 to 255. Last defined variable may be redimensioned at any time; thus, example in line is illegal but 85 is allowed. |
| <u>DSP</u> <i>var</i>                                                                                    | Legal:<br>90 DSP AX:DSP L<br>Illegal:<br>100 DSP AX,B<br>102 DSP AB\$<br>104 DSP A(5)<br>Legal:<br>105 A=A(5): DSP A | Sets debug mode that DSP variable <i>var</i> each time it changes and the line number where the change occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| <u>NAME</u>                                                                  | <u>EXAMPLE</u>                                                                    | <u>DESCRIPTION</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>END</u>                                                                   | 110 END                                                                           | Stops program execution. Sends carriage return and ">" BASIC prompt) to screen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <u>FOR</u> <i>var</i> =<br><i>expr1</i> TO <i>expr2</i><br>STEP <i>expr3</i> | 110 FOR I=0 TO 39<br>120 FOR X=Y1 TO Y3<br>130 FOR I=39 TO 1<br>150 GOSUB 100 *J2 | Begins FOR...NEXT loop, initializes variable <i>var</i> to value of expression <i>expr1</i> then increments it by amount in expression <i>expr3</i> each time the corresponding "NEXT" statement is encountered, until value of expression <i>expr2</i> is reached. If STEP <i>expr3</i> is omitted, a STEP of +1 is assumed. Negative numbers are allowed.                                                                                                         |
| <u>GOSUB</u> <i>expr</i>                                                     | 140 GOSUB 500                                                                     | Causes branch to BASIC subroutine starting at legal line number specified by expression <i>expr</i> . Subroutines may be nested up to 16 levels.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <u>GOTO</u> <i>expr</i>                                                      | 160 GOTO 200<br>170 GOTO ALPHA+100                                                | Causes immediate jump to legal line number specified by expression <i>expr</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <u>GR</u>                                                                    | 180 GR<br>190 GR: POKE -16302,0                                                   | Sets mixed standard resolution color graphics mode. Initializes COLOR = 0 (Black) for top 40x40 of screen and sets scrolling window to lines 21 through 24 by 40 characters for four lines of text at bottom of screen. Example 190 sets all color mode (40x48 field) with no text at bottom of screen.                                                                                                                                                             |
| <u>HLIN</u> <i>expr1</i> ,<br><i>expr2</i> AT <i>expr3</i>                   | 200 HLIN 0,39 AT 20<br>210 HLIN Z,Z+6 AT 1                                        | In standard resolution color graphics mode, this command draws a horizontal line of a predefined color (set by COLOR=) starting at horizontal position defined by expression <i>expr1</i> and ending at position <i>expr2</i> at vertical position defined by expression <i>expr3</i> . <i>expr1</i> and <i>expr2</i> must be in the range of 0 to 39 and <i>expr3</i> <= <i>expr2</i> . <i>expr3</i> be in the range of 0 to 39 (or 0 to 47 if not in mixed mode). |

Note: HLIN 0, 19 AT 0 is a horizontal line at the top of the screen extending from left corner to center of screen and HLIN 20,39 AT 39 is a horizontal line at the bottom of the screen extending from center to right corner.

IF expression 220 IF A > B THEN  
THEN statement PRINT A  
 230 IF X=0 THEN C=1  
 240 IF A#10 THEN  
 GOSUB 200  
 250 IF A\$(1,1) # "Y"  
 THEN 100  
 Illegal:  
 260 IF L > 5 THEN 50:  
 ELSE 60  
 Legal:  
 270 IF L > 5 THEN 50  
 GO TO 60  
  
INPUT var1, 280 INPUT X,Y,Z(3)  
var2, str\$ 290 INPUT "AMT",  
 DLR  
 300 INPUT "Y or N?", A\$

IN# expr 310 IN# 6  
 320 IN# Y+2  
 330 IN# 0

LET 340 LET X=5  
  
LIST num1, 350 IF X > 6 THEN  
num2 LIST 50

NEXT var1, 360 NEXT I  
var2 370 NEXT J,K

NO DSP var 380 NO DSP I

NO TRACE 390 NO TRACE

If *expression* is true (non-zero) then execute *statement*; if false do not execute *statement*. If *statement* is an expression, then a GOTO *expr* type of statement is assumed to be implied. The "ELSE" in example 260 is illegal but may be implemented as shown in example 270.

Enters data into memory from I/O device. If number input is expected, APPLE will output "?"; if string input is expected no "?" will be outputted. Multiple numeric inputs to same statement may be separated by a comma or a carriage return. String inputs must be separated by a carriage return only. One pair of " " may be used immediately after INPUT to output prompting text enclosed within the quotation marks to the screen.

Transfers source of data for subsequent INPUT statements to peripheral I/O slot (1-7) as specified as by expression *expr*. Slot 0 is not addressable from BASIC. IN#0 (Example 330) is used to return data source from peripheral I/O to keyboard connector.

Assignment operator. "LET" is optional

Causes program from line number *num1* through line number *num2* to be displayed on screen.

Increments corresponding "FOR" variable and loops back to statement following "FOR" until variable exceeds limit.

Turns-off DSP debug mode for variable

Turns-off TRACE debug mode

|                                                      |                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>PLOT</u> , <i>expr1</i> , <i>expr2</i>            | 400 PLOT 15, 25<br>400 PLT XV,YV                                                                                                 | In standard resolution color graphics, this command plots a small square of a predefined color (set by COLOR=) at horizontal location specified by expression <i>expr1</i> in range 0 to 39 and vertical location specified by expression <i>expr2</i> in range 0 to 39 (or 0 to 47 if in all graphics mode) NOTE: PLOT 0 0 is upper left and PLOT 39, 39 (or PLOT 39, 47) is lower right corner. |
| <u>POKE</u> <i>expr1</i> , <i>expr2</i>              | 420 POKE 20, 40<br>430 POKE 7*256,<br>XMOD255                                                                                    | Stores decimal number defined by expression <i>expr2</i> in range of 0 255 at decimal memory location specified by expression <i>expr1</i> . Locations above 32767 are specified by negative numbers.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <u>POP</u>                                           | 440 POP                                                                                                                          | "POPS" nested GOSUB return stack address by one.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <u>PRINT</u> <i>var1</i> , <i>var</i> , <i>str\$</i> | 450 PRINT L1<br>460 PRINT L1, X2<br>470 PRINT "AMT=";DX<br>480 PRINT A\$;B\$;<br>490 PRINT<br>492 PRINT "HELLO"<br>494 PRINT 2+3 | Outputs data specified by variable <i>var</i> or string variable <i>str\$</i> starting at current cursor location. If there is not trailing ",", " or ";" (Ex 450) a carriage return will be generated. Commas (Ex. 460) outputs data in 5 left justified columns. Semi-colon (Ex. 470) inhibits print of any spaces. Text imbedded in " " will be printed and may appear multiple times.         |
| <u>PR#</u> <i>expr</i>                               | 500 PR# 7                                                                                                                        | Like IN#, transfers output to I/O slot defined by expression <i>expr</i> . PR# 0 is video output not I/O slot 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <u>REM</u>                                           | 510 REM REMARK                                                                                                                   | No action. All characters after REM are treated as a remark until terminated by a carriage return.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <u>RETURN</u>                                        | 520 RETURN<br>530 IFX= 5 THEN<br>RETURN                                                                                          | Causes branch to statement following last GOSUB; i.e., RETURN ends a subroutine. Do not confuse "RETURN" statement with Return key on keyboa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |



## SPECIAL CONTROL AND EDITING CHARACTERS

"Control" characters are indicated by a super-scripted "C" such as G<sup>C</sup>. They are obtained by holding down the CTRL key while typing the specified letter. Control characters are NOT displayed on the TV screen. B<sup>C</sup> and C<sup>C</sup> must be followed by a carriage return. Screen editing characters are indicated by a sub-scripted "E" such as D<sub>E</sub>. They are obtained by pressing and releasing the ESC key then typing specified letter. Edit characters send information only to display screen and does not send data to memory. For example, U<sup>C</sup> moves to cursor to right and copies text while A<sub>E</sub> moves cursor to right but does not copy text.

### CHARACTER

### DESCRIPTION OF ACTION

|           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RESET key | Immediately interrupts any program execution and resets computer. Also sets all text mode with scrolling window at maximum. Control is transferred to System Monitor and Apple prompts with a "*" (asterisk) and a bell. Hitting RESET key does NOT destroy existing BASIC or machine language program. |
| Control B | If in System Monitor (as indicated by a "*"), a control B and a carriage return will transfer control to BASIC, <u>scratching (killing) any existing BASIC program</u> and set HIMEM: to maximum installed user memory and LOMEM: to 2048.                                                              |
| Control C | If in BASIC, halts program and displays line number where stop occurred*. Program may be continued with a CON command. If in System Monitor, (as indicated by "*"), control C and a carriage return will enter BASIC <u>without killing current program</u> .                                           |
| Control G | Sounds bell (beeps speaker)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Control H | Backspaces cursor and deletes any overwritten characters from computer but not from screen. Apple supplied keyboards have special key "←" on right side of keyboard that provides this functions without using control button.                                                                          |
| Control J | Issues line feed only                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Control V | Compliment to H <sup>C</sup> . Forward spaces cursor and copies over written characters. Apple keyboards have "→" key on right side which also performs this function.                                                                                                                                  |
| Control X | Immediately deletes current line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

\* If BASIC program is expecting keyboard input, you will have to hit carriage return key after typing control C.

CHARACTERDESCRIPTION OF ACTION

|                |                                                        |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| A <sub>E</sub> | Move cursor to right                                   |
| B <sub>E</sub> | Move cursor to left                                    |
| C <sub>E</sub> | Move cursor down                                       |
| D <sub>E</sub> | Move cursor up                                         |
| E <sub>E</sub> | Clear text from cursor to end of line                  |
| F <sub>E</sub> | Clear text from cursor to end of page                  |
| @ <sub>E</sub> | Home cursor to top of page, clear text to end of page. |

Table A: APPLE II COLORS AS SET BY COLOR =

Note: Colors may vary depending on TV tint (hue) setting and may also be changed by adjusting trimmer capacitor C3 on APPLE II P.C. Board.

|                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 0 = Black        | 8 = Brown       |
| 1 = Magenta      | 9 = Orange      |
| 2 = Dark Blue    | 10 = Grey       |
| 3 = Light Purple | 11 = Pink       |
| 4 = Dark Green   | 12 = Green      |
| 5 = Grey         | 13 = Yellow     |
| 6 = Medium Blue  | 14 = Blue/Green |
| 7 = Light Blue   | 15 = White      |



## Special Controls and Features

| <u>Hex</u>                   | <u>BASIC Example</u>                                | <u>Description</u>                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>Display Mode Controls</u> |                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| C050                         | 10 POKE -16304,0                                    | Set color graphics mode                                                                                                                                                |
| C051                         | 20 POKE -16303,0                                    | Set text mode                                                                                                                                                          |
| C052                         | 30 POKE -16302,0                                    | Clear mixed graphics                                                                                                                                                   |
| C053                         | 40 POKE -16301,0                                    | Set mixed graphics (4 lines text)                                                                                                                                      |
| C054                         | 50 POKE -16300,0                                    | Clear display Page 2 (BASIC commands use Page 1 only)                                                                                                                  |
| C055                         | 60 POKE -16299,0                                    | Set display to Page 2 (alternate)                                                                                                                                      |
| C056                         | 70 POKE -16298,0                                    | Clear HIRES graphics mode                                                                                                                                              |
| C057                         | 80 POKE -16297,0                                    | Set HIRES graphics mode                                                                                                                                                |
| <u>TEXT Mode Controls</u>    |                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 0020                         | 90 POKE 32,L1                                       | Set left side of scrolling window to location specified by L1 in range of 0 to 39.                                                                                     |
| 0021                         | 100 POKE 33,W1                                      | Set window width to amount specified by W1. $L1+W1 < 40$ . $W1 > 0$                                                                                                    |
| 0022                         | 110 POKE 34,T1                                      | Set window top to line specified by T1 in range of 0 to 23                                                                                                             |
| 0023                         | 120 POKE 35,B1                                      | Set window bottom to line specified by B1 in the range of 0 to 23. $B1 > T1$                                                                                           |
| 0024                         | 130 CH=PEEK(36)<br>140 POKE 36,CH<br>150 TAB(CH+1)  | Read/set cursor horizontal position in the range of 0 to 39. If using TAB, you must add "1" to cursor position read value; Ex. 140 and 150 perform identical function. |
| 0025                         | 160 CV=PEEK(37)<br>170 POKE 37,CV<br>180 VTAB(CV+1) | Similar to above. Read/set cursor vertical position in the range 0 to 23.                                                                                              |
| 0032                         | 190 POKE 50,127<br>200 POKE 50,255                  | Set inverse flag if 127 (Ex. 190) <del>POKE</del><br>Set normal flag if 255 (Ex. 200)                                                                                  |
| FC58                         | 210 CALL -936                                       | (@E) Home cursor, clear screen                                                                                                                                         |
| FC42                         | 220 CALL -958                                       | (FE) Clear from cursor to end of page                                                                                                                                  |

| <u>Hex</u> | <u>BASIC Example</u> | <u>Description</u>                   |
|------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| FC9C       | 230 CALL -868        | (E) Clear from cursor to end of line |
| FC66       | 240 CALL -922        | (J) Line feed                        |
| FC70       | 250 CALL -912        | Scroll up text one line              |

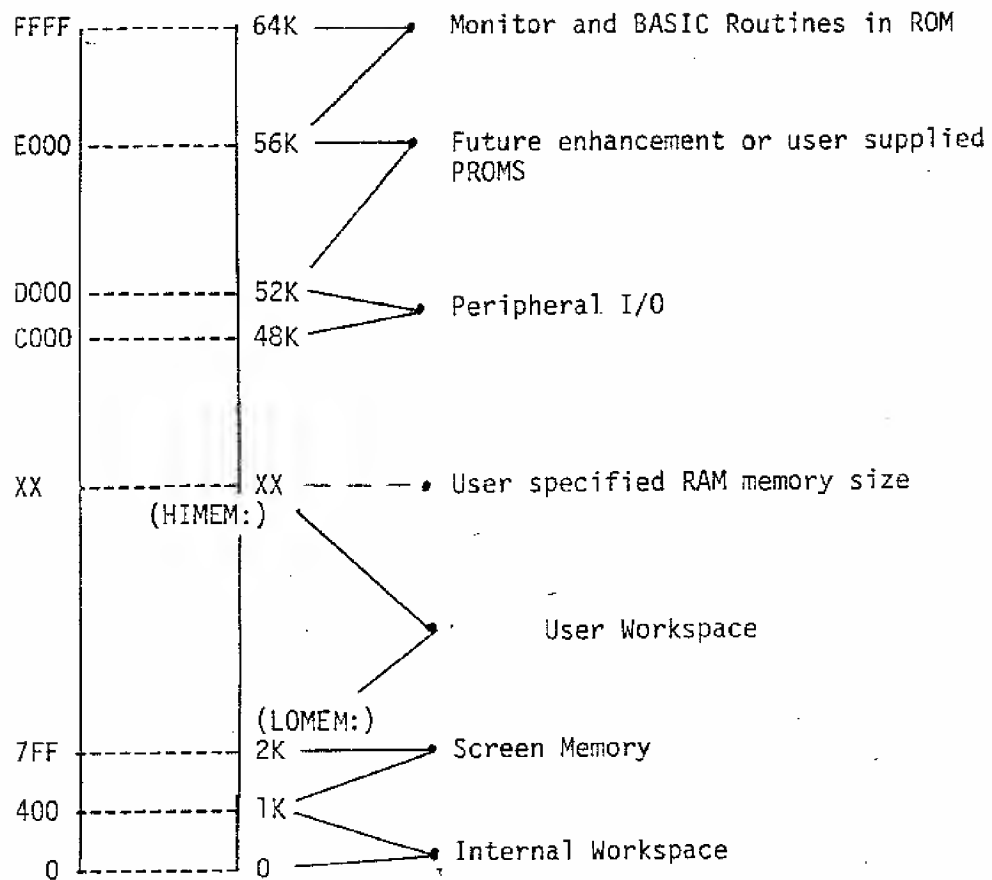
#### Miscellaneous

|      |                                         |                                                               |
|------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| C030 | 360 X=PEEK(-16336)<br>365 POKE -16336,0 | Toggle speaker                                                |
| C000 | 370 X=PEEK(-16384                       | Read keyboard; if X>127 then key was pressed.                 |
| C010 | 380 POKE -16368,0                       | Clear keyboard strobe - always after reading keyboard.        |
| C061 | 390 X=PEEK(-16287)                      | Read PDL(0) push button switch. If X>127 then switch is "on". |
| C062 | 400 X=PEEK(-16286)                      | Read PDL(1) push button switch.                               |
| C063 | 410 X=PEEK(-16285)                      | Read PDL(2) push button switch.                               |
| C058 | 420 POKE -16296,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN0 output                                     |
| C059 | 430 POKE -16295,0                       | Set Game I/O AN0 output                                       |
| C05A | 440 POKE -16294,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN1 output                                     |
| C05B | 450 POKE -16293,0                       | Set Game I/O AN1 output                                       |
| C05C | 460 POKE -16292,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN2 output                                     |
| C05D | 470 POKE -16291,0                       | Set Game I/O AN2 output                                       |
| C05E | 480 POKE -16290,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN3 output                                     |
| C05F | 490 POKE -16289,0                       | Set Game I/O AN3 output                                       |

## APPLE II BASIC ERROR MESSAGES

|                    |                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| *** SYNTAX ERR     | Results from a syntactic or typing error.                                                                                             |
| *** > 32767 ERR    | A value entered or calculated was less than -32767 or greater than 32767.                                                             |
| *** > 255 ERR      | A value restricted to the range 0 to 255 was outside that range.                                                                      |
| *** BAD BRANCH ERR | Results from an attempt to branch to a non-existent line number.                                                                      |
| *** BAD RETURN ERR | Results from an attempt to execute more RETURNS than previously executed GOSUBs.                                                      |
| *** BAD NEXT ERR   | Results from an attempt to execute a NEXT statement for which there was not a corresponding FOR statement.                            |
| *** 16 GOSUBS ERR  | Results from more than 16 nested GOSUBs.                                                                                              |
| *** 16 FORS ERR    | Results from more than 16 nested FOR loops.                                                                                           |
| *** NO END ERR     | The last statement executed was not an END.                                                                                           |
| *** MEM FULL ERR   | The memory needed for the program has exceeded the memory size allotted.                                                              |
| *** TOO LONG ERR   | Results from more than 12 nested parentheses or more than 128 characters in input line.                                               |
| *** DIM ERR        | Results from an attempt to DIMension a string array which has been previously dimensioned.                                            |
| *** RANGE ERR      | An array was larger than the DIMensioned value or smaller than 1 or HLIN,VLIN, PLOT, TAB, or VTAB arguments are out of range.         |
| *** STR OVFL ERR   | The number of characters assigned to a string exceeded the DIMensioned value for that string.                                         |
| *** STRING ERR     | Results from an attempt to execute an illegal string operation.                                                                       |
| RETYPE LINE        | Results from illegal data being typed in response to an INPUT statement. This message also requests that the illegal item be retyped. |

### Simplified Memory Map



## READ/SAVE DATA SUBROUTINE

### INTRODUCTION

Valuable data can be generated on the Apple II computer and sometimes it is useful to have a software routine that will allow making a permanent record of this information. This paper discusses a simple subroutine that serves this purpose.

Before discussing the Read/Save routines a rudimentary knowledge of how variables are mapped into memory is needed.

Numeric variables are mapped into memory with four attributes. Appearing in order sequentially are the Variable Name, the Display Byte, the Next Variable Address, and the Data of the Variable. Diagrammatically this is represented as:

| VN | DSP | NVA | DATA(0) | DATA(1) | DATA(N)   |
|----|-----|-----|---------|---------|-----------|
| 1  |     |     | $h_1$   | $h_2$   | $h_{n+1}$ |

VARIABLE NAME - up to 100 characters represented in memory as ASCII equivalents with the high order bit set.

DSP (DISPLAY) BYTE - set to 01 when DSP set in BASIC initiates a process that displays this variable with the line number every time it is changed within a program.

NVA (NEXT VARIABLE ADDRESS) - two bytes (first low order, the second high order) indicating the memory location of the next variable.

DATA - hexadecimal equivalent of numeric information, represented in pairs of bytes, low order byte first.

String variables are formatted a bit differently than numeric ones. These variables have one extra attribute - a string terminator which designates the end of a string. A string variable is formatted as follows:

| VN | DSP | NVA | DATA(0) | DATA(1) | DATA(n)   | ST |
|----|-----|-----|---------|---------|-----------|----|
| 1  |     |     | $h_1$   | $h_2$   | $h_{n+1}$ |    |

VARIABLE NAME - up to 100 characters represented in memory as ASCII equivalents with the high order bit set.

DSP (DISPLAY) BYTE - set to 01 when DSP set in BASIC, initiates a process that displays this variable with the line number every time it is changed within a program.

NVA (NEXT VARIABLE ADDRESS) - two bytes (first low order, the second high order) indicating the memory location of the next variable.

DATA - ASCII equivalents with high order bit set.

STRING TERMINATOR (ST) - none high order bit set character indicating END of string.

There are two parts of any BASIC program represented in memory. One is the location of the variables used for the program, and the other is the actual BASIC program statements. As it turns out, the mapping of these within memory is a straightforward process. Program statements are placed into memory starting at the top of RAM memory\* unless manually shifted by the "HIMEN:" command, and are pushed down as each new (numerically larger) line numbered statement is entered into the system. Figure 1a illustrates this process diagrammatically. Variables on the other hand are mapped into memory starting at the lowest position of RAM memory - hex \$800 (2048) unless manually shifted by the "COMEM:" command. They are laid down from there (see Figure 1b) and continue until all the variables have been mapped into memory or until they collide with the program statements. In the event of the latter case a memory full error will be generated

\*Top of RAM memory is a function of the amount of memory.  
16384 will be the value of "HIMEN:" for a 16K system.

The computer keeps track of the amount of memory used for the variable table and program statements. By placing the end memory location of each into \$CC (208)-\$ (205) and \$CA(202)-\$ CB(203), respectively. These are the BASIC memory program pointers and their values can be found by using the statements in Figure 2. CM defined in Figure 1 as the location of the end of the variable tape is equal to the number resulting from statement a of Figure 2. PP, the program pointer, is equal to the value resulting from statement 2b. These statements(Figure 2) can then be used on any Apple II computer to find the limits of the program and variable table.

#### FINDING THE VARIABLE TABLE FROM BASIC

First, power up the Apple II, reset it, and use the CTRL B (control B) command to place the system into BASIC initializing the memory pointers. Using the statements from Figure 2 it is found that for a 16K Apple II CM is equal to 2048 and PP is equal to 16384. These also happen to be the values of LOMEN and HIMEN: But this is expected because upon using the B<sup>C</sup> command both memory pointers are initialized indicating no program statements and no variables.

To illustrate what a variable table looks like in Apple II memory suppose we want to assign the numeric variable A (\$C1 is the ASCII equivalent of a with the high order bit set) the value of -1 (FF FF in hex) and then examine the memory contents. The steps in this process are outlined in example I. Variable A is defined as equal to -1 (step 1). Then for convenience another variable - B - is defined as equal to 0 (step 2). Now that the variable table has been defined use of statement 2a indicates that CM is equal to 2060 (step 3). LOMEN has not been readjusted so it is equal to 2048. Therefore the variable table resides in memory from 2048 (\$800 hex) to 2060 (\$80C). Depressing the "RESET" key places the Apple II into the monitor mode (step 4).

We are now ready to examine the memory contents of the variable table. Since the variable table resides from \$800 hex to \$80C hex typing in "800.80C" and then depressing the "RETURN" key (step 5) will list the memory contents of this range. Figure 3 lists the contents with each memory location labelled. Examining these contents we see that C1 is equal to the variable name and is the memory equivalent of "A" and that FF FF is the equivalent of -1. From this, since the variable name is at the beginning of the table and the data is at the end, the variable table representation of A extends from \$800 to \$805. We have then found

the memory range of where the variable A is mapped into memory. The reason for this will become clear in the next section.

#### READ/SAVE ROUTINE

The READ/SAVE subroutine has three parts. The first section (lines 0-10) defines variable A and transfers control to the main program. Lines 20 through 26 represents the Write data to tape routine and lines 30-38 represent the Read data from tape subroutine. Both READ and SAVE routines are executable by the BASIC "GOSUB X" (where X is 20 for write and 30 is for read) command. And as listed these routines can be directly incorporated into almost any BASIC program for read and saving a variable table. The limitation of these routines is that the whole part of a variable table is processed so it is necessary to maintain exactly the dimension statements for the variables used.

The variables used in this subroutine are defined as follows:

A = record length, must be the first variable defined  
CM= the value obtained from statement a of figure 2  
CM= is equal to the value of "LOMEN:"  
Nominally 2048

#### AVING A DATA TABLE

The first step in a hard copy routine is to place the desired data onto tape. This is accomplished by determining the length of the variable table and setting A equal to it. Next within the main program when it is time to write the data a GOSUB20 statement will execute the write to tape process. Record length, variable A, is written to tape first (line 22) followed by the desired data (line 24). When this process is completed control is returned to the main program.

#### READING A DATA TABLE

The second step is to read the data from tape. When it is time a GOSUB30 statement will initiate the read process. First, the record length is read in and checked to see if enough memory is available (line 32-34). If exactly the same dimension statements are used it is almost guaranteed that there will be enough memory available. After this the variable table is read in (line 34) and control is then returned to the main program (line 36). If not enough memory is available then an error is generated and control is returned to the main program (line 38)



#### EXAMPLE OF READ/SAVE USAGE

The Read/Save routines may be incorporated directly into a main program. To illustrate this a test program is listed in example 2. This program dimensions a variable array of twenty by one, fills the array with numbers, writes the data table to tape, and then reads the data from tape listing the data on the video display. To get a feeling for how to use these routines enter this program and explore how the Read/Save routines work.

#### CONCLUSION

Reading and Saving data in the format of a variable table is a relatively straight forward process with the Read/Save subroutine listed in figure 4. This routine will increase the flexibility of the Apple II by providing a permanent record of the data generated within a program. This program can be reprocessed. The Read/Save routines are a valuable addition to any data processing program.

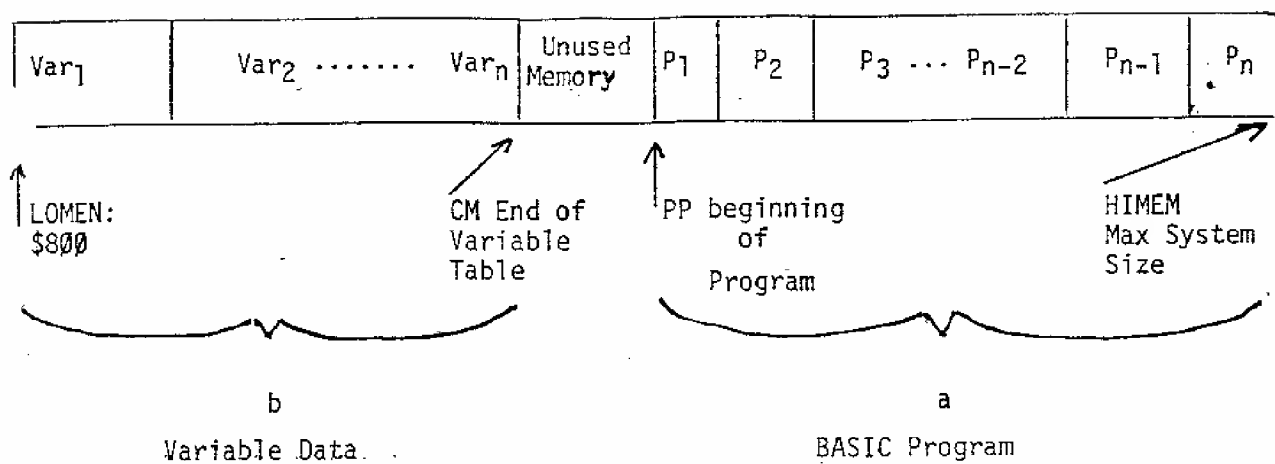


Figure 1

- a) PRINT PEEK(204) + PEEK(205)\*256 → PP
- b) PRINT PEEK(202) + PEEK(203)\*256 → CM

Figure 2

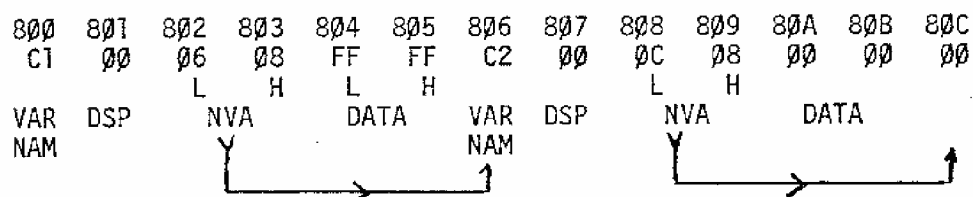


Figure 3  
\$800-\$80C rewritten with labelling

FIGURE 4b

READ/SAVE PROGRAM

COMMENTS

|    |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                            |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0  | A=0                                                                                                                                                 | This must be the first statement in the program. It is initially 0, but if data is to be saved, it will equal the length of the data base. |
| 10 | GOTO 100                                                                                                                                            | This statement moves command to the main program.                                                                                          |
| 20 | PRINT "REWIND TAPE THEN<br>START TAPE RECORDER":<br>INPUT "THEN HIT RETURN",<br>BS                                                                  | Lines 20-26 are the write data to tape subroutine.                                                                                         |
| 22 | A=CM-LM: POKE 60,4:<br>POKE 61,8: POKE 62,5:<br>POKE 63,8: CALL -307                                                                                |                                                                                                                                            |
| 24 | POKE 60,LM MOD 256:<br>POKE 61, LM/256:<br>POKE 62, CM MOD 256:<br>POKE 63, CM/256:<br>CALL -307                                                    | Writing data table to tape                                                                                                                 |
| 26 | PRINT "DATA TABLE SAVED":<br>RETURN                                                                                                                 | Returning control to main program.                                                                                                         |
| 30 | PRINT "REWIND THE TAPE<br>THEN START TAPE RECORDER":<br>INPUT "AND HIT RETURN",<br>BS                                                               | Lines 30-38 are the READ data from tape subroutine.                                                                                        |
| 32 | POKE 60,4: POKE 61,8:<br>POKE 62,5: POKE 63,8:<br>CALL -259                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                            |
| 34 | IF A<0 THEN 38: P=LM+A:<br>IF P>HM THEN 38: CM=P:<br>POKE 60, LM MOD 256:<br>POKE 61, LM/256: POKE 62,<br>CM MOD 256: POKE 63, CM/256:<br>CALL -259 | Checking the record length (A) for memory requirements if everything is satisfactory the data is READ in.                                  |
| 36 | PRINT "DATA READ IN":<br>RETURN                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                            |
| 38 | PRINT "***TOO MUCH DATA<br>BASE***": RETURN                                                                                                         | Returning control to main program.                                                                                                         |

NOTE: CM, LM and A must be defined within the main program.

- |   |                                                                                |                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | >A=1<br>>                                                                      | Define variable A=-1, then hit RETURN                     |
| 2 | >B=0<br>>                                                                      | Define variable B=0, then hit RETURN                      |
| 3 | >PRINT PEEK (204) + PEEK<br>(205) * 256<br><br>computer responds with=<br>2060 | Use statement 2a to find the end of<br>the VARIABLE TABLE |
| 4 | ><br>*                                                                         | Hit the RESET key, Apple moves into<br>Monitor mode.      |
| 5 | *800.800                                                                       | Type in VARIABLE TABLE RANGE and HIT<br>the RETURN KEY.   |

Computer responds with:

1800- C1 00 86 08 FF FF C2 00

0808 0C 08 00 00 00

Example 1

## Example 2

>LIST

```

0 A=0
10 GOTO 100
20 REM WRITE DATA TO TAPE ROUTINE
22 A=CH-LA: POKE 66,4: POKE 61
 ,8: POKE 62,5: POKE 63,9: CALL
 -307
24 POKE 62,LA MOD 256: POKE 61
 ,LA/256: POKE 62,CH MOD 256
 : POKE 63,CH/256: CALL -307

26 RETURN
30 REM READ DATA SUBROUTINE
32 POKE 66,4: POKE 61,8: POKE
 62,5: POKE 63,9: CALL -259
34 IF A<3 THEN 38:P=LA+A: IF P>
 HM THEN 38:CH=P: POKE 62,LA MOD
 256: POKE 61,LA/256: POKE 62
 ,CH MOD 256: POKE 63,CH/256
 : CALL -259
36 RETURN
38 PRINT "*** TOO MUCH DATA BASE **
 *": END
100 DIM A$(1),X(20)
105 FOR I=1 TO 20:X(I)=I: NEXT
 I
108 LA=2048:CH=2106:A=58:HM=16383

```

110 PRINT "20 NUMBERS GENERATED"

```

120 PRINT "NOW WE ARE GOING TO SAVE
 THE DATA": PRINT "WHEN YOU ARE R
 EADY START THE RECORDER IN RECOR
 D MODE": INPUT "AND HIT RETURN"
 ,A$
130 CALL -936: PRINT "NOW WRITING DA
 TA TO TAPE": GOSUB 20
135 PRINT "NOW THE DATA IS SAVED"

145 PRINT "NOW WE ARE GOING TO CLEAR
 THE X(20) TABLE AND READ THE DA
 TA FROM TAPE"
150 FOR I=1 TO 20:X(I)=0: PRINT
 "X(",I,")=" ,X(I): NEXT I
160 PRINT "NOW START TAPE RECORDER"
 : INPUT "AND THEN HIT RETURN"
 ,A$
165 PRINT "A ",A
170 GOSUB 30
180 PRINT "ALL THE DATA READ IN"

190 FOR I=1 TO 20: PRINT "X(",I,
 ")=" ,X(I): NEXT I
195 PRINT "THIS IS THE END"
200 END

```

## A SIMPLE TONE SUBROUTINE

### INTRODUCTION

Computers can perform marvelous feats of mathematical computation at well beyond the speed capable of most human minds. They are fast, cold and accurate; man on the other hand is slower, has emotion, and makes errors. These differences create problems when the two interact with one another. So to reduce this problem humanizing of the computer is needed. Humanizing means incorporating within the computer procedures that aid in a program's usage. One such technique is the addition of a tone subroutine. This paper discusses the incorporation and usage of a tone subroutine within the Apple II computer.

### Tone Generation

To generate tones in a computer three things are needed: a speaker, a circuit to drive the speaker, and a means of triggering the circuit. As it happens the Apple II computer was designed with a two-inch speaker and an efficient speaker driving circuit. Control of the speaker is accomplished through software.

Toggling the speaker is a simple process, a mere PEEK - 16336 (\$C030) in BASIC statement will perform this operation. This does not, however, produce tones, it only emits clicks. Generation of tones is the goal, so describing frequency and duration is needed. This is accomplished by toggling the speaker at regular intervals for a fixed period of time. Figure 1 lists a machine language routine that satisfies these requirements.

### Machine Language Program

This machine language program resides in page 0 of memory from \$02 (2) to \$14 (20). \$00 (00) is used to store the relative period (P) between toggling of the speaker and \$01 (01) is used as the memory location for the value of relative duration (D). Both P and D can range in value from \$00 (0) to \$FF (255). After the values for frequency and duration are placed into memory a CALL2 statement from BASIC will activate this routine. The speaker is toggled with the machine language statement residing at \$02 and then a

delay in time equal to the value in \$00 occurs. This process is repeated until the tone has lasted a relative period of time equal to the duration (value in \$01) and then this program is exited (statement \$14).

#### Basic Program

The purpose of the machine language routine is to generate tones controllable from BASIC as the program dictates. Figure 2 lists the appropriate statement that will deposit the machine language routine into memory. They are in the form of a subroutine and can be activated by a GOSUB 32000 statement. It is only necessary to use this statement once at the beginning of a program. After that the machine language program will remain in memory unless a later part of the main program modifies the first 20 locations of page 0.

After the GOSUB 32000 has placed the machine language program into memory it may be activated by the statement in Figure 3. This statement is also in the form of a GOSUB because it can be used recursively in a program. Once the frequency and duration have been defined by setting P and D equal to a value between 0 and 255 a GOSUB 25 statement is used to initiate the generation of a tone. The values of P and D are placed into \$00 and \$01 and the CALL2 command activates the machine language program that toggles the speaker. After the tone has ended control is returned to the main program.

The statements in Figures 2 and 3 can be directly incorporated into BASIC programs to provide for the generation of tones. Once added to a program an infinite variety of tone combinations can be produced. For example, tones can be used to prompt, indicate an error in entering or answering questions, and supplement video displays on the Apple II computer system.

Since the computer operates at a faster rate than man does, prompting can be used to indicate when the computer expects data to be entered. Tones can be generated at just about any time for any reason in a program. The programmer's imagination can guide the placement of these tones.

#### CONCLUSION

The incorporation of tones through the routines discussed in this paper will aid in the humanizing of software used in the Apple computer. These routines can also help in transforming a dull program into a lively one. They are relatively easy to use and are a valuable addition to any program.

```

0000- FF ???
0001- FF ???
0002- AD 30 00 LDA #0030
0003- 88 DEY
0004- D0 04 BNE #000C
0005- C6 01 DEC #01
0006- F0 00 BEQ #0014
0007- CA DEX
0008- D0 F6 BNE #0005
0009- A6 00 LDX #00
0010- 4C 02 00 JMP #0002
0011- 60 RTS

```

FIGURE 1. Machine Language Program  
adapted from a program by P. Lutas.

```

32000 POKE 2,179: POKE 3,49: POKE
 4,192: POKE 5,136: POKE 6,288
 : POKE 7,4: POKE 8,136: POKE
 9,1: POKE 10,248
32005 POKE 11,8: POKE 12,200: POKE
 13,256: POKE 14,245: POKE 15
 ,156: POKE 16,8: POKE 17,76
 : POKE 18,2: POKE 19,8: POKE
 20,96: RETURN

```

FIGURE 2. BASIC "POKES"

```

85 POKE 0,P: POKE 1,D: GOTO 2:
 RETURN

```

FIGURE 3. GOSUB



## High-Resolution Operating Subroutines

These subroutines were created to make programming for High-Resolution Graphics easier, for both BASIC and machine language programs. These subroutines occupy 757 bytes of memory and are available on either cassette tape or Read-Only Memory (ROM). This note describes use and care of these subroutines.

There are seven subroutines in this package. With these, a programmer can initialize High-Resolution mode, clear the screen, plot a point, draw a line, or draw and animate a predefined shape on the screen. There are also some other general-purpose subroutines to shorten and simplify programming.

BASIC programs can access these subroutines by use of the CALL statement, and can pass information by using the POKE statement. There are special entry points for most of the subroutines that will perform the same functions as the original subroutines without modifying any BASIC pointers or registers. For machine language programming, a JSR to the appropriate subroutine address will perform the same function as a BASIC CALL.

In the following subroutine descriptions, all addresses given will be in decimal. The hexadecimal substitutes will be preceded by a dollar sign (\$). All entry points given are for the cassette tape subroutines, which load into addresses C00 to FFF (hex). Equivalent addresses for the ROM subroutines will be in *italic type face*.

## h-Resolution Operating Subroutines

INIT    Initializes High-Resolution Graphics mode.

From BASIC: CALL 3072 (or CALL -12288)

From machine language: JSR \$C00 (or JSR \$D000)

This subroutine sets High-Resolution Graphics mode with a 280 x 160 matrix of dots in the top portion of the screen and four lines of text in the bottom portion of the screen. INIT also clears the screen.

EAR    Clears the screen.

From BASIC: CALL 3086 (or CALL -12274)

From machine language: JSR \$C0E (or JSR \$D00E)

This subroutine clears the High-Resolution screen without resetting the High-Resolution Graphics mode.

PLOT    Plots a point on the screen.

From BASIC: CALL 3780 (or CALL -11580)

From machine language: JSR \$C7C (or JSR \$D07C)

This subroutine plots a single point on the screen. The X and Y coordinates of the point are passed in locations 800, 801, and 802 from BASIC, or in the A, X, and Y registers from machine language. The Y (vertical) coordinate can be from 0

## High-Resolution Operating Subroutines

### PLOT (continued)

(top of screen) to 159 (bottom of screen) and is passed in location 802 or the A-register; but the X (horizontal) coordinate can range from 0 (left side of screen) to 279 (right side of screen) and must be split between locations 800 ( $X \text{ MOD } 256$ ) and 801 ( $X/256$ ). or, from machine language, between registers X (X LO) and Y (X HI). The color of the point to be plotted must be set in location 812 (\$32C). Four colors are possible: 0 is BLACK, 85 (\$55) is GREEN, 170 (\$AA) is VIOLET, and 255 (\$FF) is WHITE.

### POSN Positions a point on the screen.

From BASIC: CALL 3761 (or CALL -11599)

From machine language: JSR \$C26 (or JSR \$D026)

This subroutine does all calculations for a PLOT, but does not plot a point (it leaves the screen unchanged). This is useful when used in conjunction with LINE or SHAPE (described later). To use this subroutine, set up the X and Y coordinates just the same as for PLOT. The color in location 812 (\$32C) is ignored.

### LINE Draws a line on the screen.

From

## 1-Resolution Operating Routines

LINE    Draws a line on the screen.

From BASIC: CALL 3786 (or CALL -11574)

From machine language: JSR \$C95 (or JSR \$D095)

This subroutine draws a line from the last point PLOTTed or POSN'ed to the point specified. One endpoint is the last point PLOTTed or POSN'ed; the other endpoint is passed in the same manner as for a PLOT or POSN. The color of the line is set in location 812 (\$32C). After the line is drawn, the new endpoint becomes the base endpoint for the next line drawn.

SHAPE    Draws a predefined shape on the screen.

From BASIC: CALL 3805 (or CALL -11555)

From machine language: JSR \$DBC (or JSR \$D1BC)

This subroutine draws a predefined shape on the screen at the point previously PLOTTed or POSN'ed. The shape is defined by a *table of vectors* in memory. (How to create a vector table will be described later). The starting address of this table should be passed in locations 804 and 805 from BASIC or in the Y and X registers from machine language. The color of the shape could be passed in location 28 (\$1C).

There are two special variables that are used only with shapes: the scaling factor and the rotation factor. The scaling factor determines the relative size of the shape. A scaling factor of

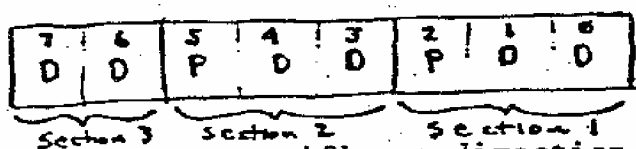
## High-Resolution Operating Subroutines

### SHAPE (continued)

1 will cause the shape to be drawn true size, while a scaling factor of 2 will draw the shape double size, etc. The scaling factor is passed in location 806 from BASIC or \$32F from machine language. The rotation factor specifies one of 64 possible angles of rotation for the shape. A rotation factor of 0 will cause the shape to be drawn right-side up, where a rotation factor of 16 will draw the shape rotated 90° clockwise, etc. The rotation factor is passed in location 807 from BASIC or in the A-register from machine language.

The table of vectors which defines the shape to be drawn is a series of bytes stored in memory. Each byte is divided into three sections, and each section specifies whether or not to plot a point and also a direction to move (up, down, left, or right). The SHAPE subroutine steps through the vector table byte by byte, and then through each byte section by section. When it reaches a 00 byte, it is finished.

The three sections are arranged in a byte like this:



DD = 00 Move ↑  
01 " +  
10 " ↓  
11 " ←

Each bit pair DD specifies a direction to move, and the two bits P specify whether or not to plot a point before moving. Notice that the last section (most significant bits) does not have a P field, so it can only be a move without plotting. The SHAPE

## gh-Resolution Operating Subroutines

### SHAPE (continued)

subroutine processes the sections from right to left (least significant bit to most significant bit). IF THE REMAINING SECTIONS OF THE BYTE ARE ZERO, THEN THEY ARE IGNORED. Thus, the byte cannot end with sections of 00 (move up without plotting).

Here is an example of how to create a vector table:

Suppose we want to draw a shape like this:



First, draw it on graph paper, one dot per square. Then decide where to start drawing the shape. Let's start this one in the center. Next, we must draw a path through each point in the shape, using only 90° angles on the turns:



Next, re-draw the shape as a series of vectors, each one moving one place up, down, left, or right, and distinguish the vectors that plot a point before moving:



Now "unwrap" those vectors and write them in a straight line.

↓ ↓ ← ← ↑ ↑ ↑ ↑ → → → → ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ← ←

Now draw a table like the one in Figure 1. For each vector in the line, figure the bit code and place it in the next available section in the table. If it will not fit or is a 00 at the end of a byte, then skip that section and go on to the next. When you have finished

## High-Resolution Operating Subroutines

### SHAPE (continued)

coding all vectors, check your work to make sure it is accurate. Then make another table (as in figure 2) and re-copy the coded vectors from the first table. Then decode the vector information into a series of hexadecimal bytes, using the hexadecimal code table in figure 3. This series of hexadecimal bytes is your shape definition table, which you can now put into the Apple II's memory and use to draw that shape on the screen.

Shape vectors:  $\downarrow \downarrow \leftarrow \leftarrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \uparrow \rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \leftarrow \leftarrow$

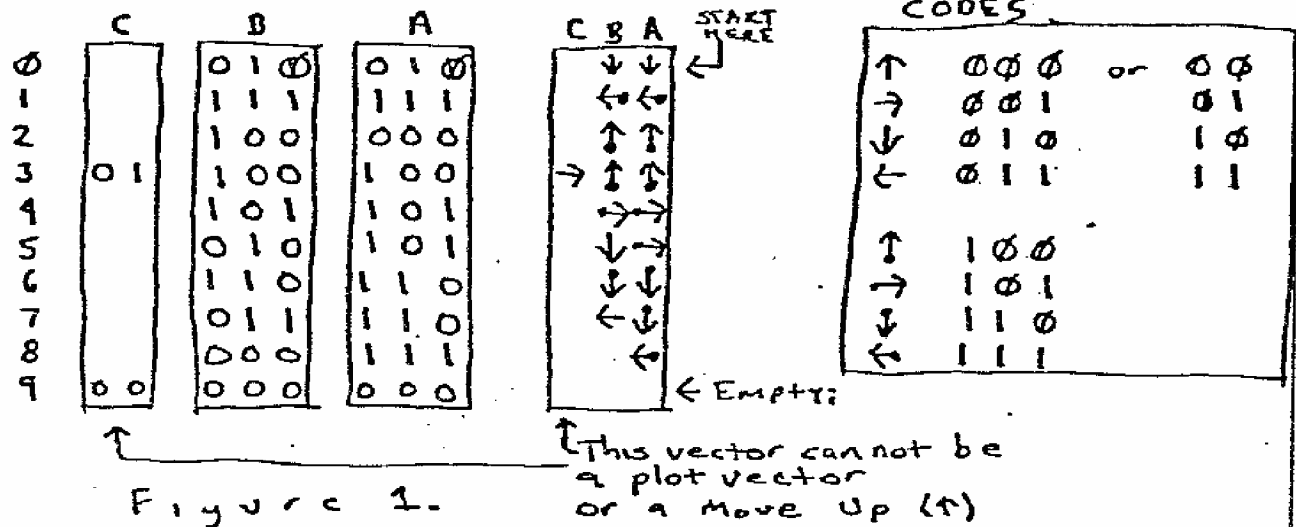


Figure 2 shows a table (C | B | A) and a Hex-decimal Codes table.

|   | C       | B       | A |
|---|---------|---------|---|
| 0 | 0 0 0 1 | 0 0 1 0 |   |
| 1 | 0 0 1 1 | 1 1 1 1 |   |
| 2 | 0 0 1 0 | 0 0 0 0 |   |
| 3 | 0 1 1 0 | 0 1 0 0 |   |
| 4 | 0 0 1 0 | 1 1 0 1 |   |
| 5 | 0 0 0 1 | 0 1 0 1 |   |
| 6 | 0 0 1 1 | 0 1 1 0 |   |
| 7 | 0 0 0 1 | 1 1 1 0 |   |
| 8 | 0 0 0 0 | 0 1 1 1 |   |
| 9 | 0 0 0 0 | 0 0 0 0 |   |

=

|              |
|--------------|
| 1 2          |
| 3 F          |
| 2 0          |
| 6 4          |
| 2 D          |
| 1 5          |
| 3 6          |
| 1 E          |
| 0 7          |
| 0 0 ← Empty; |

denotes end of vector table.

| Hex-decimal Codes |     |
|-------------------|-----|
| 0 0 0 0           | → 0 |
| 0 0 0 1           | → 1 |
| 0 0 1 0           | → 2 |
| 0 0 1 1           | → 3 |
| 0 1 0 0           | → 4 |
| 0 1 0 1           | → 5 |
| 0 1 1 0           | → 6 |
| 0 1 1 1           | → 7 |
| 1 0 0 0           | → 8 |
| 1 0 0 1           | → 9 |
| 1 0 1 0           | → A |
| 1 0 1 1           | → B |
| 1 1 0 0           | → C |
| 1 1 0 1           | → D |
| 1 1 1 0           | → E |
| 1 1 1 1           | → F |



# REM HIRES DEMO-BASIC LISTING

XLIST

```

1 INIT=2072: CLEAR=3686: POSN=3761
: PLOT=3780: LINE=3786: SHAPE=
3885: FREQ=3667: SINTBL=3848
3 DIM X(10),Y(10)
10 TEXT : CALL -936: VTAB 4: TAB -
10: PRINT "=== 14K APPLE II ==="
: PRINT " *** HIGH RESOLUTION &
GRAPHICS DEMOS ***": PRINT
15 PRINT "1 RANDOM LINE DRAW AT 80S
10 SPEED": PRINT "2 RANDOM SHAPE
PROJECTED INTO CORNER"
20 PRINT "3 CHRIS' AND FULLY":
PRINT "4 RANDOM SHAPE SPIRALING
INTO POINT": PRINT "5 SPIROGRAPH
H"
25 PRINT "6 HI-RES POINT": PRINT
"7 RANDOM WAVE FORM": PRINT
"8 SUM OF TWO SINE WAVES"
30 PRINT : PRINT "HIT ANY KEY FOR N
EW DEMO": PRINT "TYPE 'CONTROL C
'; RETURN BUTTON THEN TYPE 'T
EXT AND RETURN BUTTON TO STOP"

```

```

50 PRINT : INPUT "WHICH DEMO # 00 Y
OU WANT ",X1
90 IF X1<1 OR X1>8 THEN 10: CALL
INIT: GOTO 100+X1
100 CALL INIT: X=40: Y=X: GOSUB 2000
: POKE 812,255: CALL PLOT
110 X= RND (200): Y= RND (160): GOSUB
2000: CALL LINE: IF NOT RND
(300) THEN POKE 83, ("PEEK (
20)+ RND (3)+1) MOD 4+85: GOSUB
3000: GOTO 110
200 GOSUB 1000: X= RND (2)+279: Y=
RND (2)+159: CALL PLOT: FOR
J=1 TO 30: FOR I=1 TO 8: POKE
800,X(1) MOD 256: POKE 801,
X(1)/255: POKE 802,Y(1): CALL
LINE

```

```

530 IF RND (500)<0 THEN POKE 28
, RND (4)+85: Y=Y+YDIR*8: IF
Y>9 AND Y(10) THEN 510: YDIR=
-YDIR: Y=-Y: IF Y<0 THEN Y=Y+
310: GOSUB 3000: GOTO 510
600 POKE -16382,0: POKE 768,5: POKE
769,8: POKE 800,140: POKE 801
,8: POKE 802,0: POKE 804,8:
POKE 825,3: POKE 812,255: CALL
POSN
610 FOR R=2 TO 4160: POKE 387,R MOD
84: POKE 806,2+6* NOT (R MOD
65): CALL SHAPE: NEXT R: GOSUB
3000: GOTO 610
700 J= RND (10)+ RND (10): K= RND
(33)+ RND (31)+ RND (60): L=
RND (9)/0: PRINT "FREQ#1= "
,J: " FREQ#2= ",K
710 GOSUB 4000: GOSUB 3000: GOTO
700
800 INPUT "REL FREQ #1=",J: INPUT
"REL FREQ #2=",R: INPUT "MODE (0
=5010, 1=POINTS)",L
810 GOSUB 4000: GOSUB 3000: GOTO
800
1000 CALL CLEAR: POKE 812, RND (
3)+85+85: R= RND (2)+2: RND
(2): FOR I=1 TO R: X(1)= RND
(160): Y(1)= RND (160): NEXT
I
1010 X=X(1): Y=Y(1): GOSUB 2000: RETURN
2000 POKE 800,X MOD 256: POKE 801
,X/255: POKE 802,Y: RETURN
3000 IF PEEK (-16384)<120 THEN RETURN
: POKE -16380,0: POP : GOTO
10
4000 CALL INIT: POKE 812,255: X=0
: B=0: FOR I=0 TO 279: A=(X+J)
MOD 256: B=(B+K) MOD 256: Y=
("PEEK (SINTBL+A)+ PEEK (SINTBL+
B)/4+16
4010 POKE 800,I MOD 256: POKE 801
,I/255: POKE 802,Y: CALL LINE
6*(NOT I OR L): NEXT I: RETURN

```

```

310 X(1)=(X(1)-X)/5+10+X: Y(1)=(
Y(1)-Y)/9+10+Y: NEXT I,J: GOSUB
3000: GOTO 200
300 CALL INIT: X= RND (24)+10+20
: Y= RND (14)+10+20: POKE 812
, RND (3)+85+85: GOSUB 2000
: CALL PLOT
310 IF RND (1000)<1 THEN 300: IF
NOT RND (200) THEN POKE 20,
RND (4)+85
320 X1=X+ RND (3)-1+25: Y1=Y+
RND (3)-1+15: IF X1<0 OR
X1>279 OR Y1<0 OR Y1>159 THEN
320
330 X=X1: Y=Y1: GOSUB 2000: CALL
LINE: GOSUB 3000: GOTO 310
400 GOSUB 1000: POKE 812, RND (
3)+25+85: CALL PLOT
410 FOR J=1 TO 25: FOR I=1 TO R:
POKE 800,X(1) MOD 255: POKE
801,X/255: POKE 802,Y(1): CALL
LINE
420 X=(X(1)-80+(Y(1)-80)/2)+9/10
+85: Y(1)=(Y(1)-80+(X(1)-80)
/8)+9/10+80: X(1)=X: NEXT I,
J: GOSUB 3000: GOTO 400
500 CALL INIT: POKE 800,0: CALL
PLOT: X=0: Y=0: XDIR=1: YDIR=1:
A=5: B=3: C=8
510 POKE 800,0: POKE 801,0: POKE
802,Y: CALL LINE: POKE 800,
(279-X) MOD 256: POKE 801,X/
24: POKE 802,159: CALL LINE:
POKE 800,23: POKE 801,1: POKE
802,159-Y: CALL LINE
515 IF RND (500) THEN 520: A=1+ RND
(13): B=2+ RND (6): C=4+ RND
(7)
520 POKE 800,X MOD 256: POKE 801
,X/255: POKE 802,B: CALL LINE:
X=X+XDIR*8: IF X>9 AND X<280
THEN 530: XDIR=-XDIR: X=-X: IF
X<0 THEN X=X+330

```

## ROD'S COLOR PATTERN

### PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

ROD'S COLOR PATTERN is a simple but eloquent program. It generates a continuous flow of colored mosaic-like patterns in a 40 high by 40 wide block matrix. Many of the patterns generated by this program are pleasing to the eye and will dazzle the mind for minutes at a time.

### REQUIREMENTS

4K or greater Apple II system with a color video display.  
BASIC is the programming language used.

### PROGRAM LISTING

```
100 GR
105 FOR W=0 TO 50
110 FOR I=1 TO 19
115 FOR J=0 TO 19
120 K=I+J
130 COLOR=I*3/(I+3)+J*2/12
135 PLOT I,K: PLOT K,I: PLOT 40
 -I,40-K
136 PLOT 40-K,40-I: PLOT K,40-I:
 PLOT 40-I,K: PLOT I,40-K: PLOT
 40-K,I
140 NEXT J,I
145 NEXT W: GOTO 105
```

# PROGRAM LISTING: PONG

```

5 REM PONG BY WENDELL BITTER
10 REM 7/7/77
15 REM PADDLE SWITCHES CONTROL
 PADDLE SIZE AFTER A MISS
 OR DURING A HIT
20 CR
25 DIM P(3): DIM HP*(10)
30 A=30:B=110:C=-1
35 COLOR=13: VLIN 1,30 AT 0: HLIN
 1,30 AT 30
40 CALL -936: VTAB 30: INPUT "HANDS
 ALL OR PONG ? "HP$
45 INPUT "PADDLE SIZE (1-6) "
 P$: IF P$(1) OR P$>6 THEN 45
 :E=P$-1
50 CALL -936
55 IF HP$(1)>"H" THEN 205
60 H=1: COLOR=13: VLIN 0,39 AT
 39: GOTO 205
65 FOR X=0 TO 3 STEP 0
70 Y=VY+V: IF Y<0 AND Y<30 THEN
 80: IF Y<1 THEN Y=1: IF Y>30
 THEN Y=30
75 Y=-Y: FOR T=1 TO 5:H=PEEK
 (-16336): NEXT T
80 IF X=0 OR X=39=0 THEN 85: COLOR=
 0: PLOT X-C,Y: COLOR=15: PLOT
 X,Y
85 VY=V: IF X MOD 2=0 THEN GOSUB
 235: NEXT X
90 GOSUB 235
95 IF SCREEN(X,VY+V+V*(40 AND Y+
 V)-1)=0 THEN 165
100 FOR T=1 TO 10:H=PEEK (-16336
): NEXT T
105 IF H AND C/8 THEN 130
110 PP=P(X/30)
115 IF Y=PP THEN V=3: IF Y=PP+1
 THEN V=2: IF Y=PP+2 THEN V=
 1

```

```

120 IF Y=PP+3 THEN V=-1: IF Y=PP+
 4 THEN V=-2: IF Y=PP+5 THEN
 V=-3
125 IF S=0 THEN V=3- RND (7)
130 COLOR=0: PLOT X-C,Y
135 IF (H AND C/8) OR (VY=0 AND
 (V) AND X=0) THEN V=4- RND
 (9)
140 IF X=0 THEN VY=0 AND (V)
145 A=30-A:B=30-B:C=-C
150 IF PEEK (-16286)>127 AND S#
 5 THEN S=5+1
155 IF PEEK (-16287)>127 AND S#
 0 THEN S=5-1
160 GOTO 65
165 COLOR=0: PLOT X-C,Y
170 COLOR=15: PLOT X,Y+V*(Y+V)-
 1 AND Y+V*(40)
175 FOR T=1 TO 75:H=PEEK (-16336
)+PEEK (-16336)-PEEK (-16336
): NEXT T
180 IF X=0 THEN SR=SR+1: IF X=30
 THEN SL=SL+1
185 VTAB 29: TAB 7: PRINT SL: TAB
 33: PRINT SR
190 COLOR=0: PLOT X-C,Y
195 IF SL=15 OR SR=15 THEN 200
200 COLOR=0: PLOT X,Y+V*(Y+V)-1
 AND Y+V*(40)
205 FOR T=1 TO 75: IF T MOD 5#0
 THEN 210: IF PEEK (-16286)
 >127 AND S#5 THEN S=5+1: IF
 PEEK (-16287)>127 AND S#0 THEN
 S=5-1
210 GOSUB 235: NEXT T
215 VY=P(0): IF X=0 THEN VY=P(1
)
220 IF H THEN VY= RND (37)+1
225 V=1- RND (3)
230 GOTO 65

```

```

235 IF H THEN 245:P(1)=(PDL (
 1)-24)*20/115: IF P(1)=P(3
) THEN 245: IF P(1)<0 THEN
 P(1)=0: IF P(1)>5/39 THEN P(
 1)=39-5
240 COLOR=0: VLIN P(1),P(1)+5 AT
 39: COLOR=0: IF P(1)>P(3) THEN
 VLIN 0,P(1)-1 AT 39: IF P(1
)>P(3) THEN VLIN P(1)+5+1,39
 AT 39:P(3)=P(1)
245 P(0)=(PDL (0)-24)*20/115
 : IF P(0)<0 THEN P(0)=0: IF
 P(0)>P(2) THEN RETURN : IF
 P(0)>5/39 THEN P(0)=39-5
250 COLOR=0: VLIN P(0),P(0)+5 AT
 0: COLOR=0: IF P(0)>P(2) THEN
 VLIN 0,P(0)-1 AT 0: IF P(0)
 >P(2) THEN VLIN P(0)+5+1,39
 AT 0
255 COLOR=0: IF P(0)>P(2) THEN
 VLIN 0,P(0)-1 AT 0: IF P(0)
 <P(2) THEN VLIN P(0)+5+1,39
 AT 0:P(2)=P(0): RETURN
260 PRINT "": END
265 END

```

## COLOR SKETCH

### PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

Color Sketch is a little program that transforms the Apple II into an artist's easel, the screen into a sketch pad. The user as an artist has a 40 high by 40 wide (1600 blocks) sketching pad to fill with a rainbow of fifteen colors. Placement of colors is determined by controlling paddle inputs; one for the horizontal and the other for the vertical. Colors are selected by depressing a letter from A through P on the keyboard.

An enormous number of distinct pictures can be drawn on the sketch pad and this program will provide many hours of visual entertainment.

### REQUIREMENTS

This program will fit into a 4K system in the BASIC mode.

# PROGRAM LISTING: COLOR SKETCH

```

5 POKE 2,170: POKE 3,48: POKE
4,192: POKE 5,165: POKE 6,0
: POKE 7,32: POKE 8,168: POKE
9,252: POKE 10,165: POKE 11
,1: POKE 12,208: POKE 13,4
10 POKE 14,199: POKE 15,24: POKE
16,240: POKE 17,5: POKE 18,
190: POKE 19,1: POKE 20,76:
POKE 21,2: POKE 22,8: POKE
23,36
15 DIM B$(40): TEXT : CALL -936
: GOTO 90
20 CALL -936: GOTO 90
25 B= LEN(B$): FOR Z=1 TO 4: GOSUB
55: PRINT B$(Z,Z): NEXT Z:
GOSUB 70: RETURN
30 B$="*****"
*****": RETURN
35 B$="COLOR SKETCH": RETURN
40 B$="COPYRIGHT APPLE COMPUTER 197
7": RETURN
45 B$="THIS PROGRAM ALLOWS YOU TO "
: RETURN
50 B$="SKETCH COLORED FIGURES IN"
: RETURN
55 B$="LOW RESOLUTION GRAPHICS WITH
PRIMILES": RETURN
60 KK=20:TON=20: GOSUB 85: RETURN
65 KK=10:TON=10: GOSUB 85: RETURN
70 KK=20:TON=30: GOSUB 85:KK=30
:TON=90: GOSUB 85: RETURN
75 KK=20:TON=20: GOSUB 85: RETURN
80 KK=0:TON=250: GOSUB 85:KK=0
:TON=250: GOSUB 85: RETURN
85 POKE 1,TON MOD 255: POKE 24
,TON/256+1: POKE 0,KK: CALL
2: RETURN
90 GOSUB 30: GOSUB 25: PRINT :
TAB 13: GOSUB 35: GOSUB 25
: PRINT : GOSUB 30: GOSUB 25
: PRINT : TAB 5: GOSUB 40: GOSUB
25: PRINT : GOSUB 30: GOSUB
25
95 PRINT : GOSUB 70: GOSUB 45:
GOSUB 25: PRINT : GOSUB 50
: GOSUB 25: PRINT : GOSUB 55
: GOSUB 25: PRINT
100 PRINT : PRINT : GOSUB 70: INPUT
"WHEN READY HIT RETURN",B$
105 OR
110 B$="ABCDEFGHIJKLMN": CALL
-936
115 FOR Z=0 TO 15: COLOR=Z: PLOT
Z*2+4,39: VTAB 21: GOSUB 75
: TAB Z*2+5: PRINT B$(Z+1,Z+
1): GOSUB 75: NEXT Z: TAB
1
120 VTAB 22:B$="TYPE A LETTER TO CH
ANGE COLOR.": GOSUB 25: PRINT
:B$="TYPE SPACE BAR TO STOP PLOT
": GOSUB 25: PRINT
125 Y= PCL (1)*38/255:X= PCL (0
)*39/255: VTAB 24: TAB 1: PRINT
"CURSOR POSITION: X=";X;" Y="
;Y;"
130 IF PEEK (-16384)>127 THEN 145
: IF X1=X AND Y1=Y THEN 125
: COLOR=C2: PLOT X1,Y1: IF
NOT FLAG THEN 135: COLOR=C:
PLOT X,Y
135 C2= SCREEN(X,Y):C3=15: IF C2=
15 THEN C3=0: COLOR=C3: PLOT
X,Y:X1=X:Y1=Y
140 GOTO 125
145 IF PEEK (-16384)>160 THEN 155
:FLAG=0: POKE -16368,0: POKE
24,20: COLOR=0: HLIN 0,35 AT
39: CALL -936
150 PRINT :B$="CONTINUE OR STOP"
: VTAB 24: GOSUB 25: INPUT
"(C/S) ",B$: IF B$(1,1)="C"
THEN 110: PRINT "END": END
155 FLAG=1:C= PEEK (-16384)-160
: POKE -16368,0: GOTO 125

```

## MASTERMIND PROGRAM

### PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

MASTERMIND is a game of strategy that matches your wits against Apple's. The object of the game is to choose correctly which 5 colored bars have been secretly chosen by the computer. Eight different colors are possible for each bar - Red (R), Yellow (Y), Violet (V), Orange (O), White (W), and Black (B). A color may be used more than once. Guesses for a turn are made by selecting a color for each of the five hidden bars. After hitting the RETURN key Apple will indicate the correctness of the turn. Each white square to the right of your turn indicates a correctly colored and positioned bar. Each grey square acknowledges a correctly colored but improperly positioned bar. No squares indicate you're way off.

Test your skill and challenge the Apple II to a game of MASTERMIND.

### REQUIREMENTS

8K or greater Apple II computer system.

BASIC is the programming language.

# PROGRAM LISTING: MASTERMIND

```

0 REM GAME OF MASTERMIND 0-25-77
102 (APPLE COMPUTER)
10 DIM A(5),D(5),X(5),K(5)
3)X(1)=2:X(2)=12:X(3)=1:X(4)=15:X(5)=3:X(6)=9:X(7)=15
:X(8)=5:X(9)=8:PRINT "BERRYVOWK"
20 TEXT : CALL -936: PRINT "
WELOO
ME TO THE GAME OF MASTERMIND:
YOUR OBJECT IS TO GUESS 5 COLOR
S (WHICH"
30 PRINT "I WILL MAKE UP) IN THE MI
NIMUM NUMBER OF GUESSES. THERE
ARE EIGHT DIFFERENT COLORS TO
CHOOSE FROM."
40 PRINT "
FEWER THAN 7 GUESSES-EXC
ELLENT": PRINT " 7 TO 9 GUESSE
S-----GOOD": PRINT " 10 TO 14 G
UESSES-----AVERAGE"
50 PRINT "MORE THAN 14 GUESSES-POO
R
*: CALL -304: TAB 7: PRINT
"HIT ANY KEY TO BEGIN PLAY"
100 CALL -309: IF PEEK (-16384)
<132 THEN 100: POKE -16384,
0: OR : PRINT " FOR I=1 TO
8:D(I)= RND (8)+1:COLOR=X(
I): HLIN I+4-2,I+4 AT 39: PRINT
" :X(I),I): NEXT I
110 TRY=0: PRINT : PRINT " LETTER
KEYS FOR COLOR CHANGE": PRINT
" ARROW KEYS FOR ADVANCE AND BA
CK": PRINT " HIT RETURN TO REC
EPT GUESS 2:
200 Y=TRY+2 MOD 36+1:TRY=TRY+1:
TAB 32: PRINT TRY: COLOR=
0: HLIN 2,39 AT Y:FLASH=1: FOR
N=1 TO 5:K(N)=0: GOSUB 1000
: NEXT N:N=1
300 FOR WAIT=1 TO 10:KEY= PEEK
(-16384): IF KEY<132 THEN 310
: POKE -16384,0:FLASH=1: FOR
I=1 TO 5: IF KEY< ASC(X(I)
) THEN NEXT I: IF I=9 THEN
310:K(N)=1:KEY=149
310 GOSUB 1000: IF KEY=141 THEN
400: IF KEY=136 AND N=1 OR
KEY=149 AND N=6 THEN N=N+KEY/
5-20: NEXT WAIT:FLASH=1-FLASH:
GOTO 300
400 COLOR=15:N=0: FOR I=1 TO 5:
D(I)=D(I)+J-1: GOSUB 2000: NEXT
I: IF N=5 THEN 500: COLOR=5
: FOR J=1 TO 5: FOR I=1 TO
5: GOSUB 2000: NEXT I,J: GOTO
200
500 PRINT : PRINT "
YOU GOT IT IN "
:TRY:" TRIES (": IF TRY<7 THEN
PRINT "EXCELLENT": IF TRY<
6 AND TRY<10 THEN PRINT "GOOD"
:
510 IF TRY>9 AND TRY<15 THEN PRINT
"AVERAGE": IF TRY>14 THEN
PRINT "POOR": PRINT "": CALL
-304: TAB 5: PRINT "HIT ANY KEY
TO PLAY AGAIN": GOTO 100
1000 IF N=0 THEN RETURN : COLOR=
X(K(N))+FLASH: HLIN N+4-2,N+
4 AT Y: RETURN
2000 IF ACI(X(N)) THEN RETURN :
N=N+1: PLOT 21+N*N,N: PRINT
" ":A(I)=0:D(I)=0: RETURN
3000 REM CALL -304 SETS INVERSE VID
3010 REM CALL -300 SETS NORMAL VID
3020 REM PEEK(-16384) IS KBD (ASCII)
(IF > 127 THEN STROBE SET)
3030 REM POKE-16384 CLRS KBD STROBE
3040 REM CALL-936 CLEARS SCREEN AND
TABS CURSOR TO UPPER LEFT.
3050 REM IN 310, KEY/5-20= -1 OR +1
(ARROW KEY=136 OR 149 ASCII)
4000 REM STMTS 10-50 INTRO
4010 REM STMTS 100-110 NEW SETUP
4020 REM STMT 200 NEW GUESS
4030 REM STMTS 300-310 USER INPUT
4040 REM STMT 400 GUESS EVAL
4050 REM STMTS 500-510 WIN
4060 REM SUBR 1000 COLOR LINE
4070 REM SUBR 2000 MATCH TEST

```

## BIORHYTHM PROGRAM

### PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

This program plots three Biorhythm functions: Physical (P), Emotional (E), and Mental (M) or intellectual. All three functions are plotted in the color graphics display mode.

Biorhythm theory states that aspects of the mind run in cycles. A brief description of the three cycles follows:

#### Physical

The Physical Biorhythm takes 23 days to complete and is an indirect indicator of the physical state of the individual. It covers physical well-being, basic bodily functions, strength, coordination, and resistance to disease.

#### Emotional

The Emotional Biorhythm takes 28 days to complete. It indirectly indicates the level of sensitivity, mental health, mood, and creativity.

#### Mental

The mental cycle takes 33 days to complete and indirectly indicates the level of alertness, logic and analytic functions of the individual, and mental receptivity.

#### Biorhythms

Biorhythms are thought to affect behavior. When they cross a "baseline" the functions change phase - become unstable - and this causes Critical Days. These days are, according to the theory, our weakest and most vulnerable times. Accidents, catching colds, and bodily harm may occur on physically critical days. Depression, quarrels, and frustration are most likely on emotionally critical days. Finally, slowness of the mind, resistance to new situations and unclear thinking are likely on mentally critical days.

### REQUIREMENTS

This program fits into a 4K or greater system.

BASIC is the programming language used.



# PROGRAM LISTING: BIORHYTHM

```

5 POKE 2,170: POKE 3,49: POKE
4,192: POKE 5,165: POKE 6,8
: POKE 7,32: POKE 8,168: POKE
9,252: POKE 10,165: POKE 11
,1: POKE 12,288: POKE 13,4
10 POKE 14,198: POKE 15,24: POKE
16,240: POKE 17,5: POKE 18,
199: POKE 19,1: POKE 20,76:
POKE 21,2: POKE 22,8: POKE
23,96
15 GOTO 85
20 TT=3: GOSUB 30: RETURN
25 PRINT "*****"
*****: RETURN
30 KK=8:TON=500: GOSUB 45: RETURN
35 KK=0:TON=250: GOSUB 45: RETURN
40 KK=8:TON=250: GOSUB 45:KK=9
:TON=250: GOSUB 45: RETURN
45 POKE 1,TON MOD 256: POKE 24
,TON/256+1: POKE 0,KK: CALL
2: RETURN
50 A=(19-(P*(1/100)))*(P*100(
C(1))+(P*100)(C(1)))+(P*100(=
3*(C(1)))+(P*100-C(1))/100*(C
1)/100)*
55 A=A*(P*100)*C(1))*100-(P*
100-3*(C(1)))/100*(C(1)/100)*1
A=39*(A)39+A*(A(40): RETURN
60 KK=0:TH=300: GOSUB 70:KK=3:
TH=250: GOSUB 70: RETURN
65 KK=7:TH=10: GOSUB 70: RETURN
70 POKE 1,TH MOD 256: POKE 24,
TH/256+1: POKE 0,KK: CALL 2
: RETURN
75 GOSUB 60: INPUT "DATE (M,D,Y) "
,M,D,Y:Y=Y+(Y(100)*1989
,M,D,Y:Y=Y+(Y(100)*1989
80 A=Y-(M(3)):N=Y MOD 50+365-Y/
50+82+A/4-A/100+M(3)-M/12-M/
7-M/5-3*(M(2)+0: IF M(2) THEN
N=N+21252: RETURN
85 DIM M(10),D(3),B(3),C(3),
B(3):B(1)=340:B(2)=255:B(3)
)=242:C(1)=575:C(2)=700:C(3)
)=825:B(1)=20:B(2)=28
90 B(3)=33: TEXT : CALL -930:
POKE 34,20: GOSUB 20: GOSUB
25: GOSUB 20: PRINT : TAB 10
: PRINT "APPLE II BIORHYTHM (AK)
": TAB 15: PRINT
95 GOSUB 25: TAB 5: PRINT "COPYRIGHT
1977 APPLE COMPUTER INC."
: POKE 34,24: VTAB 24
100 GOSUB 60: INPUT "NAME ",N:
VTAB 22: PRINT N: VTAB 24
: PRINT "BIRTH ": GOSUB 75
: VTAB 22: TAB 21: PRINT "BIRTH
DATE ",N," ",D," ",Y: VTAB
24:M1=N: CALL -868
105 PRINT "FORECAST ": GOSUB 75
:N=N-M1: IF N(0) THEN N=N+21252
: VTAB 23: TAB 10: PRINT "FORECA
ST DATE ",N," ",D," ",Y: VTAB
24: CALL -868
110 J=1: GR : POKE 34,20: FOR X=
10 TO 20: COLOR=3: NLIH 0,31
AT X: NEXT X: NLIH 1,3 AT
3: NLIH 1,3 AT 37: VLIH 2,4
AT 2: VTAB 21
115 FOR Y=1 TO 31 STEP 3: PRINT
Y: IF Y(10) THEN PRINT " ":
: PRINT " ": NEXT Y: PRINT
" P E N": VTAB 24
120 VTAB 23: PRINT "DAYS LIVED "
:N: FOR I=1 TO 3: COLOR=1*(
I=1)+6*(I=2)+0*(I=3): VLIH
0,20 AT 35+I+1: VTAB 24
125 FOR X=0 TO 31:P=(N MOD B(1)
+N) MOD B(1): GOSUB 58: PLOT
X,N: GOSUB 65: NEXT X: NEXT
I
130 PRINT : INPUT "ANOTHER PLOT (Y/N
) ",B: IF B(1,1)="Y" THEN
30: END

```

## DRAGON MAZE PROGRAM

### PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

DRAGON MAZE is a game that will test your skill and memory. A maze is constructed on the video screen. You watch carefully as it is completed. After it is finished the maze is hidden as if the lights were turned out. The object of the game is to get out of the maze before the dragon eats you. A reddish-brown square indicates your position and a purple square represents the dragon's. You move by hitting a letter on the keyboard; U for up, D for down, R for right, and L for left. As you advance so does the dragon. The scent of humans drives the dragon crazy; when he is enraged he breaks through walls to get at you. DRAGON MAZE is not a game for the weak at heart. Try it if you dare to attempt out-smarting the dragon.

### REQUIREMENTS

8K or greater Apple II computer system.  
BASIC is the programming language.



DRAGON MAZE cont.

|                                      |                                    |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1225 DX=3*X-2:HY=3*Y-2               | 2520 GOTO 2620                     | 7000 IF X>SX THEN 7085: IF Y>SY THEN |
| 1230 DY= RND (13)+1                  | 3020 DX=8:DY=1                     | 7050                                 |
| 1240 COLOR=0: VLIN 3*DY-2,3*DY+1     | 3010 IF KX+13*(Y-2))/10 THEN 4200  | 7001 IF X<SX THEN 7100: IF Y<SY THEN |
| RT 39                                |                                    | 7150                                 |
| 1250 SX=13:SY=13                     | 3020 GOTO 2620                     | 7005 IF SX=13 THEN 7050: IF K<SX     |
| 1260 DX=3*X-2:DY=3*Y-2               | 3500 DX=0:DY=1                     | 13*(SY-1))/9 THEN 7010: IF           |
| 1270 RD=1                            | 3510 IF KX+13*(Y-1))/10 THEN 4300  | K<SX+13*(SY-1))/10 THEN              |
| 1500 K= PEEK (-16336): IF K=100 THEN |                                    | 7050                                 |
| 1500                                 | 3520 GOTO 2620                     | 7010 DX=1:DY=1                       |
| 1510 PEEK (-16336)                   | 4000 GOSUB 5000                    | 7020 COLOR=0                         |
| 1515 DD=X: GOSUB 7000:K=DD           | 4010 COLOR=15                      | 7022 RX=3*SX-2:RY=3*SY-2             |
| 1516 IF SX=X AND SY=Y THEN 9000      | 4020 VLIN 3*(Y-1),3*Y AT 3*X       | 7023 FOR I=1 TO 3:RX=RX+DD*RY:RY=    |
| 1520 IF K= RND ("R") THEN 2000       | 4030 GOTO 1500                     | DY                                   |
| 1530 IF K= RND ("L") THEN 2500       | 4100 GOSUB 5000                    | 7024 COLOR=0                         |
| 1540 IF K= RND ("U") THEN 3000       | 4110 COLOR=15                      | 7025 FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO 1:     |
| 1550 IF K= RND ("D") THEN 3500       | 4120 VLIN 3*(Y-1),3*Y AT 3*(X-1)   | PLAT DX+K,DY+L: NEXT L,K: COLOR=     |
| 1560 GOSUB 5000: GOTO 1500           |                                    | RD: FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO         |
| 2000 DX=1:DY=0                       | 4130 GOTO 1500                     | 1: PLAT RX+K,RY+L: NEXT L,K          |
| 2010 IF KX+13*(Y-1))/10 MOD 10 THEN  | 4200 GOSUB 5000                    | DX=RX:DY=RY                          |
| 4030                                 | 4210 COLOR=15                      | 7030 NEXT I                          |
| 2020 FX=3*X-2:FY=3*Y-2: FOR I=1 TO   | 4220 VLIN 3*(X-1),3*X AT 3*(Y-1)   | 7035 SX=5X+DX:SY=5Y+DY               |
| 3                                    |                                    | 7040 J(SX+13*(SY-1))-K<SX+13*(SY-    |
| 2030 FX=FX+DX:FY=FY+DY               | 4230 GOTO 1500                     | 1))/10                               |
| 2040 COLOR=0                         | 4300 GOSUB 5000                    | 7045 RETURN                          |
| 2050 FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO 1:     | 4310 COLOR=15                      | 7050 IF SY=13 THEN 7100: IF J(SX+    |
| PLAT RX+K,RY+L: NEXT L,K: COLOR=     | 4320 VLIN 3*(X-1),3*X AT 3*Y       | 13*(SY-1))/9 THEN 7060: IF           |
| 3: FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO          | 4330 GOTO 1500                     | K<SX+13*(SY-1))/10 THEN 7100         |
| 1: PLAT RX+K,RY+L: NEXT L,K          | 5000 S=5-1: FOR J=1 TO 20:R= PEEK  |                                      |
| RX=FX:RY=FY                          | (-16336)+ PEEK (-16336)+ PEEK      | 7060 DX=0:DY=1: GOTO 7020            |
| 2110 NEXT I                          | (-16336)+ PEEK (-16336): NEXT      | 7100 IF SX=1 THEN 7150: IF K<SX      |
| 2115 X=X+DX:Y=Y+DY                   | J: RETURN                          | 13*(SY-1))/9 THEN 7110: IF           |
| 2116 IF X=13 AND Y=13 THEN 6000      | 6000 PRINT "YOU WIN!"              | K<SX+13*(SY-1))/10 THEN              |
| 2120 GOTO 1500                       | 6010 GOSUB 5000: GOSUB 5000: GOSUB | 7150                                 |
| 2500 DX=-1:DY=0                      | 5000                               |                                      |
| 2510 IF KX+13*(Y-1))/10 MOD 10 THEN  | 6020 PRINT "SCORE=";S+3            |                                      |
| 4100                                 | 6030 END                           |                                      |

DRAGON MAZE cont.

```
7110 DX=-1:DY=0: GOTO 7020
7150 IF DY=1 THEN 7005: IF T(SX+
 13*(SY-1))/9 THEN 7160: IF
 K(SX+13*(SY-1)-10)/18 THEN
 7005
7160 DX=0:DY=-1: GOTO 7020
8000 GOSUB 5000: GOSUB 5000: GOSUB
 5000: GOSUB 5000: PRINT "THE DAE
 MON GOT YOU!"
8999 END
```

## APPLE II FIRMWARE

### CONTENTS

1. System Monitor Commands
2. Control and Editing Characters
3. Special Controls and Features
4. Annotated Monitor and Dis-assembler Listing
5. Binary Floating Point Package
6. Sweet 16 Interpreter Listing
7. 6502 Op Codes

## System Monitor Commands

Apple II contains a powerful machine level monitor for use by the advanced programmer. To enter the monitor either press RESET button on keyboard or CALL-151 (Hex FF65) from Basic. Apple II will respond with an "\*" (asterisk) prompt character on the TV display. This action will not kill current BASIC program which may be re-entered by a C<sup>C</sup> (control C). NOTE: "adrs" is a four digit hexadecimal number and "data" is a two digit hexadecimal number. Remember to press "return" button at the end of each line.

| <u>Command Format</u>  | <u>Example</u>  | <u>Description</u>                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>Examine Memory</u>  |                 |                                                                                                                                                                   |
| adrs                   | *C0F2           | Examines (displays) single memory location of (adrs)                                                                                                              |
| adrs1.adrs2            | *1024.1048      | Examines (displays) range of memory from (adrs1) thru (adrs2)                                                                                                     |
| (return)               | * (return)      | Examines (displays) next 8 memory locations.                                                                                                                      |
| .adrs2                 | *.4096          | Examines (displays) memory from current location through location (adrs2)                                                                                         |
| <u>Change Memory</u>   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                   |
| adrs:data<br>data data | *A256:EF 20 43  | Deposits data into memory starting at location (adrs).                                                                                                            |
| :data data<br>data     | *:F0 A2 12      | Deposits data into memory starting after (adrs) last used for deposits.                                                                                           |
| <u>Move Memory</u>     |                 |                                                                                                                                                                   |
| adrs1<adrs2.<br>adrs3M | *100<B010.B410M | Copy the data now in the memory range from (adrs2) to (adrs3) into memory locations starting at (adrs1).                                                          |
| <u>Verify Memory</u>   |                 |                                                                                                                                                                   |
| adrs1<adrs2.<br>adrs3V | *100<B010.B410V | Verify that block of data in memory range from (adrs2) to (adrs3) exactly matches data block starting at memory location (adrs1) and displays differences if any. |

| <u>Command Format</u>            | <u>Example</u> | <u>Description</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>Cassette I/O</u>              |                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| adrs1.adrs2R                     | *300.4FFR      | Reads cassette data into specified memory (adrs) range. Record length must be same as memory range or an error will occur.                                                                                                                                      |
| adrs1.adrs2W                     | *800.9FFW      | Writes onto cassette data from specified memory (adrs) range.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <u>Display</u>                   |                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| I                                | *I             | Set inverse video mode. (Black characters on white background)                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| N                                | *N             | Set normal video mode. (White characters on black background)                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <u>Dis-assembler</u>             |                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| adrsL                            | *C800L         | Decodes 20 instructions starting at memory (adrs) into 6502 assembly mnemonic code.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| L                                | *L             | Decodes next 20 instructions starting at current memory address.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <u>Mini-assembler</u>            |                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| (Turn-on)                        | *F666G         | Turns-on mini-assembler. Prompt character is now a "!" (exclamation point).                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| \$(monitor command)              | !\$C800L       | Executes any monitor command from mini-assembler then returns control to mini-assembler. Note that many monitor commands change current memory address reference so that it is good practice to retype desired address reference upon return to mini-assembler. |
| adrs:(6502 MNEMONIC instruction) | !C010:STA 23FF | Assembles a mnemonic 6502 instruction into machine codes. If error, machine will refuse instruction, sound bell, and reprint line with up arrow under error.                                                                                                    |



| <u>Command Format</u>                     | <u>Example</u>   | <u>Description</u>                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (space) (6502<br>mnemonic<br>instruction) | ! STA 01FF       | Assembles instruction into next available memory location. (Note space between "!" and instruction) |
| (TURN-OFF)                                | ! (Reset Button) | Exits mini-assembler and returns to system monitor.                                                 |

#### Monitor Program Execution and Debugging

|             |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| adrsG       | *300G           | Runs machine level program starting at memory (adrs).                                                                                                                                                                      |
| adrsT       | *800T           | Traces a program starting at memory location (adrs) and continues trace until hitting a breakpoint. Break occurs on instruction 00 (BRK), and returns control to system monitor. Opens 6502 status registers (see note 1). |
| adrsS       | *C05S           | Single steps through program beginning at memory location (adrs). Type a letter S for each additional step that you want displayed. Opens 6502 status registers (see Note 1).                                              |
| (Control E) | *E <sup>C</sup> | Displays 6502 status registers and opens them for modification (see Note 1).                                                                                                                                               |
| (Control Y) | *Y <sup>C</sup> | Executes user specified machine language subroutine starting at memory location (3F8).                                                                                                                                     |

#### Note 1:

6502 status registers are open if they are last line displayed on screen. To change them type ":" then "data" for each register.

Example: A = 3C X = FF Y = 00 P = 32 S = F2  
 \*: FF Changes A register only  
 \*:FF 00 33 Changes A, X, and Y registers

To change S register, you must first retype data for A, X, Y and P.

#### Hexidecimal Arithmetic

|             |        |                                                       |
|-------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| data1+data2 | *78+34 | Performs hexidecimal sum of data1 plus data2.         |
| data1-data2 | *AE-34 | Performs hexidecimal difference of data1 minus data2. |

| <u>Command Format</u>         | <u>Example</u>   | <u>Description</u>                                             |
|-------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>Set Input/Output Ports</u> |                  |                                                                |
| (X) (Control P)               | *5p <sup>C</sup> | Sets printer output to I/O slot number (X). (see Note 2 below) |
| (X) (Control K)               | *2k <sup>C</sup> | Sets keyboard input to I/O slot number (X). (see Note 2 below) |

Note 2:

Only slots 1 through 7 are addressable in this mode. Address 0 (Ex: 0p<sup>C</sup> or 0k<sup>C</sup>) resets ports to internal video display and keyboard. These commands will not work unless Apple II interfaces are plugged into specified I/O slot.

Multiple Commands

|                 |                                                                                |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| *100L 400G AFFT | Multiple monitor commands may be given on same line if separated by a "space". |
| *LLLL           | Single letter commands may be repeated without spaces.                         |

## SPECIAL CONTROL AND EDITING CHARACTERS

"Control" characters are indicated by a super-scripted "C" such as G<sup>C</sup>. They are obtained by holding down the CTRL key while typing the specified letter. Control characters are NOT displayed on the TV screen. B<sup>C</sup> and C<sup>C</sup> must be followed by a carriage return. Screen editing characters are indicated by a sub-scripted "E" such as D<sub>E</sub>. They are obtained by pressing and releasing the ESC key then typing specified letter. Edit characters send information only to display screen and does not send data to memory. For example, U<sup>C</sup> moves to cursor to right and copies text while A<sub>E</sub> moves cursor to right but does not copy text.

| <u>CHARACTER</u>                                                                                                 | <u>DESCRIPTION OF ACTION</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RESET key                                                                                                        | Immediately interrupts any program execution and resets computer. Also sets all text mode with scrolling window at maximum. Control is transfered to System Monitor and Apple prompts with a "*" (asterisk) and a bell. Hitting RESET key does NOT destroy existing BASIC or machine language program. |
| Control B                                                                                                        | If in System Monitor (as indicated by a "*"), a control B and a carriage return will transfer control to BASIC, <u>scratching (killing) any existing BASIC program</u> and set HIMEM: to maximum installed user memory and LOMEM: to 2048.                                                             |
| Control C                                                                                                        | If in BASIC, halts program and displays line number where stop occurred*. Program may be continued with a CON command. If in System Monitor, (as indicated by "*"), control C and a carriage return will enter BASIC <u>without</u> killing current program.                                           |
| Control G                                                                                                        | Sounds bell (beeps speaker)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Control H                                                                                                        | Backspaces cursor and deletes any overwritten characters from computer but not from screen. Apple supplied keyboards have special key "+-" on right side of keyboard that provides this functions without using control button.                                                                        |
| Control J                                                                                                        | Issues line feed only                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Control V                                                                                                        | Compliment to H <sup>C</sup> . Forward spaces cursor and copies over written characters. Apple keyboards have "→" key on right side which also performs this function.                                                                                                                                 |
| Control X                                                                                                        | Immediately deletes current line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| * If BASIC program is expecting keyboard input, you will have to hit carriage return key after typing control C. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

SPECIAL CONTROL AND EDITING CHARACTERS  
(continued)

| <u>CHARACTER</u> | <u>DESCRIPTION OF ACTION</u>                           |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| A <sub>E</sub>   | Move cursor to right                                   |
| B <sub>E</sub>   | Move cursor to left                                    |
| C <sub>E</sub>   | Move cursor down                                       |
| D <sub>E</sub>   | Move cursor up                                         |
| E <sub>E</sub>   | Clear text from cursor to end of line                  |
| F <sub>E</sub>   | Clear text from cursor to end of page                  |
| @ <sub>E</sub>   | Home cursor to top of page, clear text to end of page. |

## Special Controls and Features

| <u>Hex</u>                   | <u>BASIC Example</u>                                | <u>Description</u>                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>Display Mode Controls</u> |                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| C050                         | 10 POKE -16304,0                                    | Set color graphics mode                                                                                                                                                |
| C051                         | 20 POKE -16303,0                                    | Set text mode                                                                                                                                                          |
| C052                         | 30 POKE -16302,0                                    | Clear mixed graphics                                                                                                                                                   |
| C053                         | 40 POKE -16301,0                                    | Set mixed graphics (4 lines text)                                                                                                                                      |
| C054                         | 50 POKE -16300,0                                    | Clear display Page 2 (BASIC commands use Page 1 only)                                                                                                                  |
| C055                         | 60 POKE -16299,0                                    | Set display to Page 2 (alternate)                                                                                                                                      |
| C056                         | 70 POKE -16298,0                                    | Clear HIRES graphics mode                                                                                                                                              |
| C057                         | 80 POKE -16297,0                                    | Set HIRES graphics mode                                                                                                                                                |
| <u>TEXT Mode Controls</u>    |                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 0020                         | 90 POKE 32,L1                                       | Set left side of scrolling window to location specified by L1 in range of 0 to 39.                                                                                     |
| 0021                         | 100 POKE 33,W1                                      | Set window width to amount specified by W1. $L1+W1 < 40$ . $W1 > 0$                                                                                                    |
| 0022                         | 110 POKE 34,T1                                      | Set window top to line specified by T1 in range of 0 to 23                                                                                                             |
| 0023                         | 120 POKE 35,B1                                      | Set window bottom to line specified by B1 in the range of 0 to 23. $B1 > T1$                                                                                           |
| 0024                         | 130 CH=PEEK(36)<br>140 POKE 36,CH<br>150 TAB(CH+1)  | Read/set cursor horizontal position in the range of 0 to 39. If using TAB, you must add "1" to cursor position read value; Ex. 140 and 150 perform identical function. |
| 0025                         | 160 CV=PEEK(37)<br>170 POKE 37,CV<br>180 VTAB(CV+1) | Similar to above. Read/set cursor vertical position in the range 0 to 23.                                                                                              |
| 0032                         | 190 POKE 50,127<br>200 POKE 50,255                  | Set inverse flag if 127 (Ex. 190)<br>Set normal flag if 255 (Ex. 200)                                                                                                  |
| FC58                         | 210 CALL -936                                       | (0E) Home cursor, clear screen                                                                                                                                         |
| FC42                         | 220 CALL -958                                       | (FE) Clear from cursor to end of page                                                                                                                                  |

| <u>Hex</u> | <u>BASIC Example</u> | <u>Description</u>                    |
|------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| FC9C       | 230 CALL -868        | (EE) Clear from cursor to end of line |
| FC66       | 240 CALL -922        | (JC) Line feed                        |
| FC70       | 250 CALL -912        | Scroll up text one line               |

---

#### Miscellaneous

|      |                                         |                                                               |
|------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| C030 | 360 X=PEEK(-16336)<br>365 POKE -16336,0 | Toggle speaker                                                |
| C000 | 370 X=PEEK(-16384                       | Read keyboard; if X>127 then key was pressed.                 |
| C010 | 380 POKE -16368,0                       | Clear keyboard strobe - always after reading keyboard.        |
| C061 | 390 X=PEEK(16287)                       | Read PDL(0) push button switch. If X>127 then switch is "on". |
| C062 | 400 X=PEEK(-16286)                      | Read PDL(1) push button switch.                               |
| C063 | 410 X=PEEK(-16285                       | Read PDL(2) push button switch.                               |
| C058 | 420 POKE -16296,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN0 output                                     |
| C059 | 430 POKE -16295,0                       | Set Game I/O AN0 output                                       |
| C05A | 440 POKE -16294,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN1 output                                     |
| C05B | 450 POKE -16293,0                       | Set Game I/O AN1 output                                       |
| C05C | 460 POKE -16292,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN2 output                                     |
| C05D | 470 POKE -16291,0                       | Set Game I/O AN2 output                                       |
| C05E | 480 POKE -16290,0                       | Clear Game I/O AN3 output                                     |
| C05F | 490 POKE -16289,0                       | Set Game I/O AN3 output                                       |

---

```

*
* APPLE II
* SYSTEM MONITOR
*
* COPYRIGHT 1977 BY
* APPLE COMPUTER, INC.
*
* ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
*
* S. WOZNIAK
* A. BAUM
*

```

```

* TITLE "APPLE II SYSTEM MONITOR"
*
LOC0 EPZ $00
LOC1 EPZ $01
WNDLPT EPZ $20
WNCWDTH EPZ $21
WNDTOP EPZ $22
WNCBTH EPZ $23
CH EPZ $24
CV EPZ $25
GBASL EPZ $26
GBASH EPZ $27
BASL EPZ $28
BASH EPZ $29
BAS2L EPZ $2A
BAS2H EPZ $2B
H2 EPZ $2C
LNNEM EPZ $2C
RTNL EPZ $2C
V2 EPZ $2D
RMNEM EPZ $2D
RTNH EPZ $2D
MASK EPZ $2E
CHKSUM EPZ $2E
FORMAT EPZ $2E
LASTIN EPZ $2F
LENGTH EPZ $2F
SIGN EPZ $2F
COLOR EPZ $30
MODE EPZ $31
INVELG EPZ $32
PROMPT EPZ $33
YSAV EPZ $34
YSAV1 EPZ $35
CSWL EPZ $36
CSWH EPZ $37
KSWL EPZ $38
KSWH EPZ $39
PCL EPZ $3A
PCH EPZ $3B
XQT EPZ $3C
A1L EPZ $3C
A1H EPZ $3D
A2L EPZ $3E
A2H EPZ $3F
A3L EPZ $40
A3H EPZ $41
A4L EPZ $42
A4H EPZ $43
A5L EPZ $44
A5H EPZ $45

```

|                |          |     |             |                            |
|----------------|----------|-----|-------------|----------------------------|
|                | ACC      | EPZ | S45         |                            |
|                | XREG     | EPZ | S46         |                            |
|                | YREG     | EPZ | S47         |                            |
|                | STATUS   | EPZ | S48         |                            |
|                | SPNT     | EPZ | S49         |                            |
|                | RNDL     | EPZ | S4E         |                            |
|                | PNDH     | EPZ | S4F         |                            |
|                | ACL      | EPZ | S50         |                            |
|                | ACH      | EPZ | S51         |                            |
|                | XTNDL    | EPZ | S52         |                            |
|                | XTWDR    | EPZ | S53         |                            |
|                | AUXL     | EPZ | S54         |                            |
|                | AUXH     | EPZ | S55         |                            |
|                | PICK     | EPZ | S95         |                            |
|                | IN       | EQU | S0200       |                            |
|                | USHADR   | EQU | S03F8       |                            |
|                | MHI      | EQU | S03FB       |                            |
|                | IFOLOC   | EQU | S03FE       |                            |
|                | ICADR    | EQU | SC000       |                            |
|                | KRD      | EQU | SC000       |                            |
|                | KRDSTRF  | EQU | SC010       |                            |
|                | TAPEOUT  | EQU | SC020       |                            |
|                | SPKR     | EQU | SC030       |                            |
|                | TXTCLE   | EQU | SC050       |                            |
|                | TXTCSET  | EQU | SC051       |                            |
|                | MIXCLR   | EQU | SC052       |                            |
|                | MIXSET   | EQU | SC053       |                            |
|                | LOWSCR   | EQU | SC054       |                            |
|                | HISCR    | EQU | SC055       |                            |
|                | LORES    | EQU | SC056       |                            |
|                | HIRES    | EQU | SC057       |                            |
|                | TAPEIN   | EQU | SC060       |                            |
|                | PADOL0   | EQU | SC064       |                            |
|                | PTRIG    | EQU | SC070       |                            |
|                | BASIC    | EQU | SE000       |                            |
|                | BASIC2   | EQU | SE003       |                            |
|                |          | ORG | SF800       | ROM START ADDRESS          |
| F800: 4A       | PLOT     | LSR | A           | Y-COORD/2                  |
| F801: 08       |          | PHP |             | SAVE LSB IN CARRY          |
| F802: 20 47 F8 |          | JSR | GBASCALC    | CALC BASE ADR IN GBASL,H   |
| F805: 28       |          | PLP |             | RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY     |
| F806: A9 0F    |          | LDA | #S0F        | MASK S0F IF EVEN           |
| F808: 90 02    |          | BCC | RTMASK      |                            |
| F80A: 69 E0    |          | ADC | #SE0        | MASK SFO IF ODD            |
| F80C: 85 2E    | RTMASK   | STA | MASK        |                            |
| F80E: 81 26    | PLOT1    | LDA | (GBASL),Y   | DATA                       |
| F810: 45 30    |          | EOR | COLOR       | XOR COLOR                  |
| F812: 25 2E    |          | AND | MASK        | AND MASK                   |
| F814: 51 26    |          | EOR | (GBASL),Y   | XOR DATA                   |
| F816: 91 26    |          | STA | (GBASL),Y   | TO DATA                    |
| F818: 60       |          | RTS |             |                            |
| F819: 20 00 F8 | HLINE    | JSR | PLOT        | PLOT SQUARE                |
| F81C: C4 2C    | HLINE1   | CPY | H2          | DONE?                      |
| F81E: 80 11    |          | BCC | RTS1        | YES, RETURN                |
| F820: C8       |          | INY |             | NO, INCR INDEX (X-COORD)   |
| F821: 20 0E F8 |          | JSR | PLOT1       | PLOT NEXT SQUARE           |
| F824: 90 F6    |          | BCC | HLINE1      | ALWAYS TAKEN               |
| F826: 69 01    | VLINE2   | ADC | #S01        | NEXT Y-COORD               |
| F828: 48       | VLINE    | PHA |             | SAVE ON STACK              |
| F829: 20 00 F8 |          | JSR | PLOT        | PLOT SQUARE                |
| F82C: 68       |          | PLA |             |                            |
| F82D: C5 2D    |          | CMP | V2          | DONE?                      |
| F82F: 90 F5    |          | BCC | VLINE2      | NO, LOOP.                  |
| F831: 60       | RTS1     | RTS |             |                            |
| F832: A0 2F    | CLPSCR   | LDY | #S2F        | MAX Y, FULL SCRIN CLR      |
| F834: D0 02    |          | PHE | CLRSC2      | ALWAYS TAKEN               |
| F836: A0 27    | CLRTOP   | LDY | #S27        | MAX Y, TOP SCRIN CLR       |
| F838: 84 2D    | CLRSC2   | STY | V2          | STORE AS BOTTOM COORD      |
| F83A: A0 27    |          | FOR | VLINE CALLS |                            |
| F83C: A9 00    | CLPSC3   | LDY | #S27        | RIGHTMOST X-COORD (COLUMN) |
| F83E: 85 30    |          | LDA | #S0         | TOP COORD FOR VLINE CALLS  |
| F840: 20 28 F8 |          | STA | COLOR       | CLEAR COLOR (BLACK)        |
| F843: 88       |          | JSR | VLINE       | DRAW VLINE                 |
| F844: 10 F6    |          | DEY |             | NEXT LEFTMOST X-COORD      |
| F846: 60       |          | BPL | CLRSC3      | LOOP UNTIL DONE.           |
| F847: 48       | GBASCALC | RTS |             |                            |
| F848: 4A       |          | PHA |             | FOR INPUT 000DEFGH         |
| F849: 29 03    |          | LSR | A           |                            |
| F84B: 09 04    |          | AND | #S03        |                            |
| F84D: 85 27    |          | OPA | #S04        | GENERATE GBASH=000001FG    |
| F84F: 68       |          | STA | GBASH       |                            |
| F850: 29 18    |          | PLA |             | AND GBASL=00000000         |
| F852: 90 02    |          | AND | #S18        |                            |
| F854: 69 7F    |          | BCC | GBALC       |                            |
| F856: 85 26    | GBALC    | ADC | #S7F        |                            |
|                |          | STA | GBASL       |                            |



|                |         |                                |                                 |
|----------------|---------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| F858: 0A       |         | ASL A                          |                                 |
| F859: 0A       |         | ASL A                          |                                 |
| F85A: 05 26    |         | ORA GRASL                      |                                 |
| F85C: 85 26    |         | STA GRASL                      |                                 |
| F85E: 60       |         | RTS                            |                                 |
| F85F: A5 30    | NXTCOL  | LDA COLOR                      | INCREMENT COLOR BY 3            |
| F861: 18       |         | CLC                            |                                 |
| F862: 69 03    |         | ADC #503                       |                                 |
| F864: 29 0F    | SETCOL  | AND #50F                       | SET9 COLOR=17*A MOD 16          |
| F866: 85 30    |         | STA COLOR                      |                                 |
| F868: 0A       |         | ASL A                          | BOTH HALF BYTES OF COLOR EQUAL  |
| F869: 0A       |         | ASL A                          |                                 |
| F86A: 0A       |         | ASL A                          |                                 |
| F86B: 0A       |         | ASL A                          |                                 |
| F86C: 05 30    |         | ORA COLOR                      |                                 |
| F86E: 85 30    |         | STA COLOR                      |                                 |
| F870: 60       |         | RTS                            |                                 |
| F871: 4A       | SCFN    | LSR A                          | READ SCREEN Y-COORD/2           |
| F872: 06       |         | PHP                            | SAVE LSB (CARRY)                |
| F873: 20 47 F8 |         | JSR GRASCALC                   | CALC BASE ADDRESS               |
| F876: B1 26    |         | LDA (GRASL),Y                  | GET BYTE                        |
| F878: 28       |         | PLP                            | RESTORE LSF FROM CARRY          |
| F879: 90 04    | SCRN2   | RCC RTMSK2                     | IF EVEN, USE LO H               |
| F87B: 4A       |         | LSR A                          |                                 |
| F87C: 4A       |         | LSR A                          |                                 |
| F87D: 4A       |         | LSR A                          | SHIFT HIGH HALF BYTE DOWN       |
| F87E: 4A       |         | LSR A                          |                                 |
| F87F: 29 0F    | RTMSK2  | AND #50F                       | MASK 4-BITS                     |
| F881: 60       |         | RTS                            |                                 |
| F882: A6 3A    | INSDS1  | LDX PCL                        | PRINT PCL,H                     |
| F884: A4 3B    |         | LDY PCH                        |                                 |
| F886: 20 96 FD |         | JSR PRYX2                      |                                 |
| F889: 20 46 F9 |         | JSR PRBLN2                     | FOLLOWED BY A BLANK             |
| F88C: A1 3A    |         | LDA (PCL,X)                    | GET OF CODE                     |
| F88E: A8       | INSDS2  | TAX                            |                                 |
| F88F: 4A       |         | LSR A                          | EVEN/ODD TEST                   |
| F890: 90 09    |         | BCC IEVEN                      |                                 |
| F892: 61       |         | ROP A                          | BIT 1 TEST                      |
| F893: 30 10    |         | BCS OPP                        | XXXXXX11 INVALID OP             |
| F895: C9 A2    |         | CMP #5A2                       |                                 |
| F897: F0 0C    |         | BEO EFF                        | OPCODE \$89 INVALID             |
| F899: 29 87    |         | AND #587                       | MASK BITS                       |
| F89B: 4A       | IEVEN   | LSR A                          | LSB INTO CARRY FOR L/P TEST     |
| F89C: AA       |         | TAX                            |                                 |
| F89D: 80 62 F9 |         | LDA FMT1,X                     | GET FORMAT INDEX BYTE           |
| F8A0: 20 79 F6 |         | JSR SCRN2                      | R/L H-BYTE ON CARRY             |
| F8A3: D0 04    |         | RNE GETFMT                     |                                 |
| F8A5: A0 80    | ERP     | LDY #58C                       | SUBSTITUTE \$80 FOR INVALID OPS |
| F8A7: A9 00    |         | LDA #5C                        | SET PRINT FORMAT INDEX TO 0     |
| F8A9: AA       | GETFMT  | TAX                            |                                 |
| F8AA: BD A6 F9 |         | LDA FMT2,X                     | INDEX INTO PRINT FORMAT TABLE   |
| F8AD: 85 2E    |         | STA FORMAT                     | SAVE FOR ADR FIELD FORMATTING   |
| F8AF: 29 03    |         | AND #503                       | MASK FOR 2-BIT LENGTH           |
|                | *       | (P=1 BYTE, 1=2 BYTE, 2=3 BYTE) |                                 |
| F8B1: 85 2F    |         | STA LENGTH                     |                                 |
| F8B3: 98       |         | TYA                            | OPCODE                          |
| F8B4: 29 8F    |         | AND #58F                       | MASK FOR 1XXX1010 TEST          |
| F8B6: AA       |         | TAX                            | SAVE IT                         |
| F8B7: 98       |         | TYA                            | OPCODE TO A AGAIN               |
| F8B8: A0 03    |         | LDY #503                       |                                 |
| F8BA: E0 8A    |         | CPX #58A                       |                                 |
| F8BC: F0 0B    |         | BEO MNNDX3                     |                                 |
| F8BE: 4A       | MNNDX1  | LSR A                          |                                 |
| F8BF: 90 08    |         | BCC MNNDX3                     | FORM INDEX INTO MNEMONIC TABLE  |
| F8C1: 4A       |         | LSR A                          |                                 |
| F8C2: 4A       | MNNDX2  | LSP A                          | 1) 1XXX1010=>00101XXX           |
| F8C3: 09 20    |         | ORA #520                       | 2) XXXYYY01=>00111XXX           |
| F8C5: 88       |         | DEY                            | 3) XXXYYY10=>00110XXX           |
| F8C6: D0 FA    |         | BNE MNNDX2                     | 4) XXXYYY100=>00100XXX          |
| F8C8: C8       |         | INY                            | 5) XXXXX000=>000XXXXX           |
| F8C9: 88       | MNNDX3  | DEY                            |                                 |
| F8CA: D0 F2    |         | BNE MNNDX1                     |                                 |
| F8CC: 60       |         | RTS                            |                                 |
| F8CD: FF FF FF |         | DFB SFF,SFF,SFF                |                                 |
| F8D0: 20 82 F8 | INSTDSP | JSR INSDS1                     | GEN FMT, LEN BYTES              |
| F8D3: 48       |         | PHA                            | SAVE MNEMONIC TABLE INDEX       |
| F8D4: B1 3A    | PRNTOP  | LDA (PCL),Y                    |                                 |
| F8D6: 20 DA FD |         | JSR PRBYTE                     |                                 |
| F8D9: A2 01    |         | LDX #501                       | PRINT 2 BLANKS                  |
| F8DB: 20 4A F9 | PRNTBL  | JSR PRBL2                      |                                 |
| F8DE: C4 2F    |         | CPY LENGTH                     | PRINT INST (1-3 BYTES)          |
| F8E0: C8       |         | INY                            | IN A 12 CHR FIELD               |
| F8E1: 90 F1    |         | BCC PRNTOP                     |                                 |
| F8E3: A2 03    |         | LDX #503                       | CHAR COUNT FOR MNEMONIC PRINT   |
| F8E5: C0 04    |         | CPY #504                       |                                 |

|                       |             |                          |                             |
|-----------------------|-------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| F8E7: 90 F2           | BCC         | PRNTBL                   |                             |
| F8E9: 68              | PLA         |                          | RECOVER MNEMONIC INDEX      |
| F8EA: A8              | TAY         |                          |                             |
| F8EB: B9 C0 F9        | LDA         | MNEML,Y                  |                             |
| F8EE: 85 2C           | STA         | LMNEM                    | FETCH 3-CHAR MNEMONIC       |
| F8F0: B9 00 FA        | LDA         | MNEMP,Y                  | (PACKED IN 2-BYTES)         |
| F8F3: 85 2D           | STA         | RMNEM                    |                             |
| F8F5: A9 00 PRMN1     | LDA         | *\$00                    |                             |
| F8F7: A0 05           | LDY         | *\$05                    |                             |
| F8F9: 06 2D PRMN2     | ASL         | RMNEM                    | SHIFT 5 BITS OF             |
| F8FB: 26 2C           | ROL         | LMNEM                    | CHARACTER INTO A            |
| F8FD: 2A              | ROL         | A                        | (CLEARS CARRY)              |
| F8FE: 88              | DEY         |                          |                             |
| F8FF: D0 F8           | BNE         | PRMN2                    |                             |
| F901: 69 BF           | ADC         | *\$BF                    | ADD "?" OFFSET              |
| F903: 20 ED FD        | JSR         | COUT                     | OUTPUT A CHAR OF MNEM       |
| F906: CA              | DEX         |                          |                             |
| F907: D0 EC           | BNE         | PRMN1                    |                             |
| F909: 20 48 F9        | JSR         | PRBLNK                   | OUTPUT 3 BLANKS             |
| F90C: A4 2F           | LDY         | LENGTH                   |                             |
| F90E: A2 06           | LDX         | *\$06                    | CNT FOR 6 FORMAT BITS       |
| F910: E0 03 PRADR1    | CPX         | *\$03                    |                             |
| F912: F0 1C           | BEQ         | PRADR5                   | IF X=3 THEN ADDR.           |
| F914: 06 2E PRADR2    | ASL         | FORMAT                   |                             |
| F916: 90 0E           | BCC         | PRADR3                   |                             |
| F918: BD B3 F9        | LDA         | CHAR1-1,X                |                             |
| F91B: 20 ED FD        | JSR         | COUT                     |                             |
| F91E: BD B9 F9        | LDA         | CHAR2-1,X                |                             |
| F921: F0 03           | BEQ         | PRADR3                   |                             |
| F923: 20 ED FD        | JSR         | COUT                     |                             |
| F926: CA PRADR3       | DEX         |                          |                             |
| F927: D0 E7           | BNE         | PRADR1                   |                             |
| F929: 60              | RTS         |                          |                             |
| F92A: 88 PRADR4       | DEY         |                          |                             |
| F92B: 30 E7           | BMI         | PRADR2                   |                             |
| F92D: 20 CA FD        | JSR         | PREYTE                   |                             |
| F930: A5 2E PRADR5    | LDA         | FORMAT                   |                             |
| F932: C9 E8           | CMP         | *\$E8                    | HANDLE REL ADR MODE         |
| F934: B1 3A           | LDA         | (PCL),Y                  | SPECIAL (PRINT TARGET,      |
| F936: 90 F2           | BCC         | PRADR4                   | NOT OFFSET)                 |
| F938: 20 56 F9 RELADR | JSR         | PCADJ3                   |                             |
| F93B: AA              | TAX         |                          | PCL,PCH+OFFSET+1 TO A,Y     |
| F93C: EB              | INX         |                          |                             |
| F93D: D0 01           | BNE         | PRNTYX                   | +1 TO Y,X                   |
| F93F: C8              | INY         |                          |                             |
| F940: 98 PRNTYX       | TYA         |                          |                             |
| F941: 20 DA FD PRNTAX | JSR         | PRBYTE                   | OUTPUT TARGET ADR           |
| F944: 8A PRNTX        | TXA         |                          | OF BRANCH AND RETURN        |
| F945: 4C DA FD        | JMP         | PRBYTE                   |                             |
| F948: A2 03 PRBLNK    | LDX         | *\$03                    | BLANK COUNT                 |
| F94A: A9 A0 PRBL2     | LDA         | *\$A0                    | LOAD A SPACE                |
| F94C: 20 ED FD PRBL3  | JSR         | COUT                     | OUTPUT A BLANK              |
| F94F: CA              | DEX         |                          |                             |
| F950: D0 F8           | BNE         | PRBL2                    | LOOP UNTIL COUNT=0          |
| F952: 60              | RTS         |                          |                             |
| F953: 38 PCADJ1       | SEC         |                          | 0=1-BYTE,1=2-BYTE,          |
| F954: A5 2F PCADJ2    | LDA         | LENGTH                   | 2=3-BYTE                    |
| F956: A4 3B PCADJ3    | LDY         | PCH                      |                             |
| F958: AA              | TAX         |                          | TEST DISPLACEMENT SIGN      |
| F959: 10 01           | BPL         | PCADJ4                   | (FOR REL BRANCH)            |
| F95B: 88              | DEY         |                          | EXTEND NEG BY DECR PCH      |
| F95C: 65 3A PCADJ4    | ADC         | PCL                      |                             |
| F95E: 90 01           | BCC         | RTS2                     | PCL+LENGTH(OR DISPL)+1 TO A |
| F960: C8              | INY         |                          | CARRY INTO Y (PCH)          |
| F961: 60 RTS2         | RTS         |                          |                             |
| *                     | FMT1 BYTES: |                          | XXXXXXXX0 INSTES            |
| *                     | IF Y=0      |                          | THEN LEFT HALF BYTE         |
| *                     | IF Y=1      |                          | THEN RIGHT HALF BYTE        |
| *                     |             |                          | (X=INDEX)                   |
| F962: 04 20 54        |             |                          |                             |
| F965: 30 0D FMT1      | DFB         | \$04,\$20,\$54,\$30,\$0D |                             |
| F967: 80 04 90        |             |                          |                             |
| F96A: 03 22           | DFB         | \$80,\$04,\$90,\$03,\$22 |                             |
| F96C: 54 33 0D        |             |                          |                             |
| F96F: 80 04           | DFB         | \$54,\$33,\$0D,\$80,\$04 |                             |
| F971: 90 04 20        |             |                          |                             |
| F974: 54 33           | DFB         | \$90,\$04,\$20,\$54,\$33 |                             |
| F976: 0D 80 04        |             |                          |                             |
| F979: 90 04           | DFB         | \$0D,\$80,\$04,\$90,\$04 |                             |
| F97B: 20 54 3B        |             |                          |                             |
| F97E: 0D 80           | DFB         | \$20,\$54,\$3B,\$0D,\$80 |                             |
| F980: 04 90 00        |             |                          |                             |
| F983: 22 44           | DFB         | \$04,\$90,\$00,\$22,\$44 |                             |
| F985: 33 0D C8        |             |                          |                             |
| F988: 44 00           | DFB         | \$33,\$0D,\$C8,\$44,\$00 |                             |

|       |    |    |    |         |               |                                      |
|-------|----|----|----|---------|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| F98A: | 11 | 22 | 44 |         |               |                                      |
| F98D: | 33 | 00 |    |         | DFB           | \$11,\$22,\$44,\$33,\$00             |
| F98F: | C8 | 44 | A9 |         |               |                                      |
| F992: | 01 | 22 |    |         | DFB           | \$C8,\$44,\$A9,\$01,\$22             |
| F994: | 44 | 33 | 0D |         |               |                                      |
| F997: | 80 | 04 |    |         | DFB           | \$44,\$33,\$0D,\$80,\$04             |
| F999: | 90 | 01 | 22 |         |               |                                      |
| F99C: | 44 | 33 |    |         | DFB           | \$90,\$01,\$22,\$44,\$33             |
| F99E: | 0D | 80 | 04 |         |               |                                      |
| F9A1: | 90 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$0D,\$80,\$04,\$90                  |
| F9A2: | 26 | 31 | 87 |         |               |                                      |
| F9A5: | 9A |    |    |         | DFB           | \$26,\$31,\$87,\$9A ZZXXXY01 INSTR'S |
| F9A6: | 00 |    |    | FMT2    | DFB           | \$00 ERR                             |
| F9A7: | 21 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$21 IMM                             |
| F9A8: | 81 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$81 Z-PAGE                          |
| F9A9: | 82 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$82 ABS                             |
| F9AA: | 00 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$00 IMPLIED                         |
| F9AB: | 00 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$00 ACCUMULATOR                     |
| F9AC: | 59 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$59 (ZPAG,X)                        |
| F9AD: | 4D |    |    |         | DFB           | \$4D (ZPAG),Y                        |
| F9AE: | 91 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$91 ZPAG,X                          |
| F9AF: | 92 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$92 ASS,X                           |
| F9B0: | 8C |    |    |         | DFB           | \$8C ABS,Y                           |
| F9B1: | 4A |    |    |         | DFB           | \$4A (ABS)                           |
| F9B2: | 85 |    |    |         | DFB           | \$85 ZPAG,Y                          |
| F9B3: | 9D |    |    |         | DFB           | \$9D RELATIVE                        |
| F9B4: | AC | A9 | AC |         |               |                                      |
|       | A3 | A8 | A4 |         |               |                                      |
| F9BA: | D9 | 00 | D8 | CHAR1   | ASC           | ".,,*(S"                             |
| F9BD: | A4 | A4 | 00 | CHAR2   | DFB           | \$D9,\$00,\$D8,\$A4,\$A4,\$00        |
|       |    |    |    | *CHAR2: | "Y",0,"XSS",0 |                                      |
|       |    |    |    | *       | MNEML         | IS OF FORM:                          |
|       |    |    |    | *       | (A)           | XXXXX000                             |
|       |    |    |    | *       | (B)           | XXYY100                              |
|       |    |    |    | *       | (C)           | 1XXX1010                             |
|       |    |    |    | *       | (D)           | XXYYYY10                             |
|       |    |    |    | *       | (E)           | XXYYYY01                             |
|       |    |    |    | *       | (X=INDEX)     |                                      |
| F9C0: | 1C | 8A | 1C |         |               |                                      |
| F9C3: | 23 | 5D | 8E | MNEML   | DFB           | \$1C,\$8A,\$1C,\$23,\$5D,\$8E        |
| F9C6: | 1B | A1 | 9D |         |               |                                      |
| F9C9: | 8A | 1D | 23 |         | DFB           | \$1B,\$A1,\$9D,\$8A,\$1D,\$23        |
| F9CC: | 9D | 8E | 1D |         |               |                                      |
| F9CF: | A1 | 00 | 29 |         | DFB           | \$9D,\$8E,\$1D,\$A1,\$00,\$29        |
| F9D2: | 19 | AE | 69 |         |               |                                      |
| F9D5: | A8 | 19 | 23 |         | DFB           | \$19,\$AE,\$69,\$A8,\$19,\$23        |
| F9D8: | 24 | 53 | 1B |         |               |                                      |
| F9DB: | 23 | 24 | 53 |         | DFB           | \$24,\$53,\$1B,\$23,\$24,\$53        |
| F9DE: | 19 | A1 |    |         | DFB           | \$19,\$A1 (A) FORMAT ABOVE           |
| F9E0: | 00 | 1A | 5B |         |               |                                      |
| F9E3: | 5B | A5 | 69 |         | DFB           | \$00,\$1A,\$5B,\$5B,\$A5,\$69        |
| F9E6: | 24 | 24 |    |         | DFB           | \$24,\$24 (B) FORMAT                 |
| F9E8: | AE | AE | A8 |         |               |                                      |
| F9EB: | AD | 29 | 00 |         | DFB           | \$AE,\$AE,\$A8,\$AD,\$29,\$00        |
| F9EE: | 7C | 00 |    |         | DFB           | \$7C,\$00 (C) FORMAT                 |
| F9F0: | 15 | 9C | 6D |         |               |                                      |
| F9F3: | 9C | A5 | 69 |         | DFB           | \$15,\$9C,\$6D,\$9C,\$A5,\$69        |
| F9F6: | 29 | 53 |    |         | DFB           | \$29,\$53 (D) FORMAT                 |
| F9F8: | 84 | 13 | 34 |         |               |                                      |
| F9FB: | 11 | A5 | 69 |         | DFB           | \$84,\$13,\$34,\$11,\$A5,\$69        |
| F9FE: | 23 | A0 |    |         | DFB           | \$23,\$A0 (E) FORMAT                 |
| FA00: | D8 | 62 | 5A |         |               |                                      |
| FA03: | 48 | 26 | 62 | MNEML   | DFB           | \$D8,\$62,\$5A,\$48,\$26,\$62        |
| FA06: | 94 | 88 | 54 |         |               |                                      |
| FA09: | 44 | C8 | 54 |         | DFB           | \$94,\$88,\$54,\$44,\$C8,\$54        |
| FA0C: | 68 | 44 | 88 |         |               |                                      |
| FA0F: | 94 | 00 | B4 |         | DFB           | \$68,\$44,\$E8,\$94,\$00,\$B4        |
| FA12: | 08 | B4 | 74 |         |               |                                      |
| FA15: | B4 | 28 | 6E |         | DFB           | \$08,\$B4,\$74,\$B4,\$28,\$6E        |
| FA18: | 74 | F4 | CC |         |               |                                      |
| FA1B: | 4A | 72 | F2 |         | DFB           | \$74,\$F4,\$CC,\$4A,\$72,\$F2        |
| FA1E: | A4 | 8A |    |         | DFB           | \$A4,\$8A (A) FORMAT                 |
| FA20: | 00 | AA | A2 |         |               |                                      |
| FA23: | A2 | 74 | 74 |         | DFB           | \$00,\$AA,\$A2,\$A2,\$74,\$74        |
| FA26: | 74 | 72 |    |         | DFB           | \$74,\$72 (B) FORMAT                 |
| FA28: | 44 | 68 | B2 |         |               |                                      |
| FA2B: | 32 | B2 | 00 |         | DFB           | \$44,\$68,\$B2,\$32,\$B2,\$00        |
| FA2E: | 22 | 00 |    |         | DFB           | \$22,\$00 (C) FORMAT                 |
| FA30: | 1A | 1A | 26 |         |               |                                      |
| FA33: | 26 | 72 | 72 |         | DFB           | \$1A,\$1A,\$26,\$26,\$72,\$72        |
| FA36: | 88 | C8 |    |         | DFB           | \$88,\$C8 (D) FORMAT                 |
| FA38: | C4 | CA | 26 |         |               |                                      |
| FA3B: | 48 | 44 | 44 |         | DFB           | \$C4,\$CA,\$26,\$48,\$44,\$44        |
| FA3E: | A2 | C8 |    |         | DFB           | \$A2,\$C8 (E) FORMAT                 |

|                       |        |                  |                             |
|-----------------------|--------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| FA40: FF FF FF        |        | DEFB SFF,SFF,SFF |                             |
| FA43: 20 D0 F8 STEP   |        | JSR INSTDSP      | DISASSEMBLE ONE INST        |
| FA46: 68              |        | PLA              | AT (PCL,H)                  |
| FA47: 85 2C           |        | STA RTNL         | ADJUST TO USER              |
| FA49: 68              |        | PLA              | STACK. SAVE                 |
| FA4A: 85 2D           |        | STA RTNH         | RTN ADR.                    |
| FA4C: A2 08           |        | LDX #S08         |                             |
| FA4E: BD 10 FB XCINIT |        | LDA INITS1-1,X   | INIT XEO AREA               |
| FA51: 95 3C           |        | STA XQT,X        |                             |
| FA53: CA              |        | DEX              |                             |
| FA54: D0 F8           |        | BNE XCINIT       |                             |
| FA56: A1 3A           |        | LDA (PCL,X)      | USER OPCODE BYTE            |
| FA58: P0 42           |        | BEQ XBRK         | SPECIAL IF BREAK            |
| FA5A: A4 2F           |        | LDY LENGTH       | LEN FROM DISASSEMBLY        |
| FA5C: C9 20           |        | CMP #S20         |                             |
| FA5E: P0 59           |        | BEQ XJSR         | HANDLE JSR, PTS, JMP,       |
| FA60: C9 60           |        | CMP #S60         | JMP ( ), RTI SPECIAL        |
| FA62: P0 45           |        | BEQ XRTS         |                             |
| FA64: C9 4C           |        | CMP #S4C         |                             |
| FA66: P0 5C           |        | BEQ XJMP         |                             |
| FA68: C9 6C           |        | CMP #S6C         |                             |
| FA6A: P0 59           |        | BEQ XJMPAT       |                             |
| FA6C: C9 40           |        | CMP #S40         |                             |
| FA6E: P0 35           |        | BEQ XRTI         |                             |
| FA70: 29 1F           |        | AND #S1F         |                             |
| FA72: 49 14           |        | EOR #S14         |                             |
| FA74: C9 04           |        | CMP #S04         | COPY USER INST TO XEO AREA  |
| FA76: P0 02           |        | BEQ XQ2          | WITH TRAILING NOPS          |
| FA78: B1 3A XQ1       |        | LDA (PCL),Y      | CHANGE REL BRANCH           |
| FA7A: 99 3C 00 XQ2    |        | STA XQTN2,Y      | DISP TO 4 FOR               |
| FA7D: 88              |        | DEY              | JMP TO BRANCH OR            |
| FA7E: 10 F8           |        | BPL XQ1          | NBRANCH FROM XEQ.           |
| FA80: 20 3F FF        |        | JSR RESTORE      | RESTORE USER REG CONTENTS.  |
| FA83: 4C 3C 00        |        | JMP XQTN2        | XEQ USER OP FROM RAM        |
| FA86: 85 45 IRQ       |        | STA ACC          | (RETURN TO NBRANCH)         |
| FA88: 68              |        | PLA              |                             |
| FA89: 48              |        | PHA              | **IRQ HANDLER               |
| FA8A: 0A              |        | ASL A            |                             |
| FA8B: 0A              |        | ASL A            |                             |
| FA8C: 0A              |        | ASL A            |                             |
| FA8D: 30 03           |        | BMI BREAK        | TEST FOR BREAK              |
| FA8F: 6C FE 03        |        | JMP (IROLOC)     | USER ROUTINE VECTOR IN RAM  |
| FA92: 28              | BREAK  | PLP              |                             |
| FA93: 20 4C FF        |        | JSP SAV1         | SAVE REG'S ON BREAK         |
| FA96: 68              |        | PLA              | INCLUDING PC                |
| FA97: 85 3A           |        | STA PCL          |                             |
| FA99: 68              |        | PLA              |                             |
| FA9A: 85 3B           |        | STA PCH          |                             |
| FA9C: 20 82 F8 XBRK   |        | JSR IMDS1        | PRINT USER PC.              |
| FA9F: 20 DA FA        |        | JSR RGDS1        | AND REG'S                   |
| FAA2: 4C 65 FF        |        | JMP MON          | GO TO MONITOR               |
| FAA5: 18              | XRTI   | CLC              |                             |
| FAA6: 68              |        | PLA              | SIMULATE RTI BY EXPECTING   |
| FAA7: 85 48           |        | STA STATUS       | STATUS FROM STACK, THEN RTS |
| FAA9: 68              | XRTS   | PLA              | RTS SIMULATION              |
| FAAA: 85 3A           |        | STA PCL          | EXTRACT PC FROM STACK       |
| FAAC: 68              |        | PLA              | AND UPDATE PC BY 1 (LEN=0)  |
| FAAD: 85 3B           | PCINC2 | STA PCH          |                             |
| FAAF: A5 2F           | PCINC3 | LDA LENGTH       | UPDATE PC BY LEN            |
| FAB1: 20 56 F9        |        | JSR PCADJ3       |                             |
| FAB4: 84 3B           |        | STY PCH          |                             |
| FAB6: 18              |        | CLC              |                             |
| FAB7: 90 14           |        | BCC NEWPCL       |                             |
| FAB9: 18              | XJSR   | CLC              |                             |
| FABA: 20 54 F9        |        | JSR PCADJ2       | UPDATE PC AND PUSH          |
| FABD: AA              |        | TAX              | ONTO STACK FOR              |
| FABE: 98              |        | TYA              | JSR SIMULATE                |
| FABF: 48              |        | PHA              |                             |
| FAC0: 8A              |        | TXA              |                             |
| FAC1: 48              |        | PHA              |                             |
| FAC2: A0 02           |        | LDY #S02         |                             |
| FAC4: 18              | XJMP   | CLC              |                             |
| FAC5: B1 3A           | XJMPAT | LDA (PCL),Y      |                             |
| FAC7: AA              |        | TAX              | LOAD PC FOR JMP,            |
| FAC8: 88              |        | DEY              | (JMP) SIMULATE.             |
| FAC9: B1 3A           |        | LDA (PCL),Y      |                             |
| FACB: 86 3B           |        | STX PCH          |                             |
| FACD: 85 3A           | NEWPCL | STA PCL          |                             |
| FACF: B0 F3           |        | BCS XJMP         |                             |
| FAD1: A5 2D           | RTNJMP | LDA RTNH         |                             |
| FAD3: 48              |        | PHA              |                             |
| FAD4: A5 2C           |        | LDA RTNL         |                             |
| FAD6: 48              |        | PHA              |                             |
| FAD7: 20 85 FD        | REGDSP | JSR CROUT        | DISPLAY USER REG            |
| FAD8: A9 45           | RGDSP1 | LDA #ACC         | CONTENTS WITH               |
| FADC: 85 40           |        | STA A3L          | LABECS                      |

|                |        |                |                                        |
|----------------|--------|----------------|----------------------------------------|
| FADE: A9 00    |        | LDA #ACC/256   |                                        |
| FAE0: 85 41    |        | STA A3H        |                                        |
| FAE2: A2 FB    |        | LDX #SFB       |                                        |
| FAE4: A9 A0    | RDSP1  | LDA #SA0       |                                        |
| FAE6: 20 ED FD |        | JSR COUT       |                                        |
| FAE9: BD 1E FA |        | LDA RTBL-SFB,X |                                        |
| FAEC: 20 ED FD |        | JSR COUT       |                                        |
| FAEF: A9 BD    |        | LDA #SBD       |                                        |
| FAP1: 20 ED FD |        | JSR COUT       |                                        |
| FAP4: B5 4A    |        | LDA ACC+5,X    |                                        |
| FAP6: 20 DA FD |        | JSR PRBYTE     |                                        |
| FAP9: E8       |        | INX            |                                        |
| FAPA: 30 E8    |        | BMI RDSP1      |                                        |
| FAFC: 60       |        | RTS            |                                        |
| FAFD: 18       | BRANCH | CLC            | BRANCH TAKEN,<br>ADD LEN+2 TO PC       |
| FAFE: A0 01    |        | LDY #S01       |                                        |
| FB00: B1 3A    |        | LDA (PCL),Y    |                                        |
| FB02: 20 56 F9 |        | JSR PCADJ3     |                                        |
| FB05: 85 3A    |        | STA PCL        |                                        |
| FB07: 98       |        | TYA            |                                        |
| FB08: 38       |        | SEC            |                                        |
| FB09: B0 A2    |        | BCS PCINC2     |                                        |
| FB0B: 20 4A FF | NBRNCH | JSR SAVE       | NORMAL RETURN AFTER<br>XEQ USER OF     |
| FB0E: 38       |        | SEC            | GO UPDATE PC                           |
| FB0F: B0 9E    |        | PCS PCINC3     |                                        |
| FB11: EA       | INITBL | NOP            |                                        |
| FB12: EA       |        | NOP            | DUMMY FILL FOR<br>XEQ AREA             |
| FB13: 4C 0B FB |        | JMP NBRNCH     |                                        |
| FB16: 4C FD FA |        | JMP BRANCH     |                                        |
| FB19: C1       | RTBL   | DFS            |                                        |
| FB1A: D8       |        | DFB \$D8       |                                        |
| FB1B: D9       |        | DFB \$D9       |                                        |
| FB1C: D0       |        | DFB \$D0       |                                        |
| FB1D: D3       |        | DFB \$D3       |                                        |
| FB1E: AD 70 C0 | PREAD  | LDA PTRIG      | TRIGGER PADDLES                        |
| FB21: A0 00    |        | LDY #S00       | INIT COUNT                             |
| FB23: EA       |        | NOP            | COMPENSATE FOR 1ST COUNT               |
| FB24: EA       |        | NOP            |                                        |
| FB25: BD 64 C0 | PREAD2 | LDA PADDL0,X   | COUNT Y-REG EVERY<br>12 USEC           |
| FB28: 10 04    |        | BPL RTS2D      |                                        |
| FB2A: C8       |        | INX            |                                        |
| FB2B: D0 F8    |        | BNE PREAD2     | EXIT AT 255 MAX                        |
| FB2D: 88       |        | DEY            |                                        |
| FB2E: 60       | RTS2D  | RTS            |                                        |
| FB2F: A9 00    | INIT   | LDA #S00       | CLR STATUS FOR DEBUG<br>SOFTWARE       |
| FB31: 85 48    |        | STA STATUS     |                                        |
| FB33: AD 56 C0 |        | LDA LORES      |                                        |
| FB36: AD 54 C0 |        | LDA LOWSCR     | INIT VIDEO MODE                        |
| FB39: AD 51 C0 | SETTXT | LDA TXTSET     | SET FOR TEXT MODE                      |
| FB3C: A9 00    |        | LDA #S00       | FULL SCREEN WINDOW                     |
| FB3E: F0 0B    |        | BEQ SETWND     |                                        |
| FB40: AD 50 C0 | SETGR  | LDA TXTCLR     | SET FOR GRAPHICS MODE                  |
| FB43: AD 53 C0 |        | LDA MIXSET     | LOWER 4 LINES AS<br>TEXT WINDOW        |
| FB46: 20 36 F8 |        | JSR CLPTOP     |                                        |
| FB49: A9 14    |        | LDA #S14       |                                        |
| FB4B: 85 22    | SETWND | STA WNDTOP     | SET FOR 40 COL WINDOW<br>TOP IN A-REG, |
| FB4D: A9 00    |        | LDA #S00       | BTTM AT LINE 24                        |
| FB4F: 85 20    |        | STA WNDLFT     |                                        |
| FB51: A9 28    |        | LDA #S28       |                                        |
| FB53: 85 21    |        | STA WNDWETH    |                                        |
| FB55: A9 18    |        | LDA #S18       |                                        |
| FB57: 85 23    |        | STA WNDSTM     | VTAB TO ROW 23                         |
| FB59: A9 17    |        | LDA #S17       |                                        |
| FB5B: 85 25    | TABV   | STA CV         | VTABS TO ROW IN A-REG                  |
| FB5D: 4C 22 FC |        | JMP VTAB       |                                        |
| FB60: 20 A4 FB | MULPM  | JSR MD1        | ABS VAL OF AC AUX                      |
| FB63: A0 10    | MUL    | LDY #S10       | INDEX FOR 16 BITS                      |
| FB65: A5 50    | MUL2   | LDA ACL        | ACX * AUX + XTND<br>TO AC, XTND        |
| FB67: 4A       |        | LSR A          |                                        |
| FB68: 90 0C    |        | RCC MUL4       | IF NO CARRY,<br>NO PARTIAL PROD.       |
| FB6A: 18       |        | CLC            |                                        |
| FB6B: A2 FE    |        | LDX #SFE       |                                        |
| FB6D: B5 54    | MUL3   | LDA XTNDL+2,X  | ADD MPLCND (AUX)                       |
| FB6F: 75 56    |        | ADC AUXL+2,X   | TO PARTIAL PROD<br>(XTND).             |
| FB71: 95 54    |        | STA XTNDL+2,X  |                                        |
| FB73: E8       |        | INX            |                                        |
| FB74: D0 F7    |        | BNE MUL3       |                                        |
| FB76: A2 03    | MUL4   | LDX #S03       |                                        |
| FB78: 76       | MUL5   | DFB #S76       |                                        |
| FB79: 50       |        | DFB #S50       |                                        |
| FB7A: CA       |        | DEX            |                                        |
| FB7B: 10 FE    |        | BPL MUL5       |                                        |
| FB7D: 88       |        | DEY            |                                        |
| FB7E: D0 E5    |        | BNE MUL2       |                                        |
| FB80: 60       |        | PTS            |                                        |

|                 |         |              |                          |
|-----------------|---------|--------------|--------------------------|
| FB81: 20 A4 FB  | DIVPM   | JSR MD1      | ARS VAL OF AC, AUX.      |
| FB84: A0 10     | DIV     | LDY #S10     | INDEX FOR 16 BITS        |
| FB86: 06 50     | DIV2    | ASL ACL      |                          |
| FB88: 26 51     |         | ROL ACH      |                          |
| FB8A: 26 52     |         | RGL XTNDL    | XTND/AUX                 |
| FB8C: 26 53     |         | ROL XTNDH    | TO AC.                   |
| FB8E: 38        |         | SEC          |                          |
| FB8F: A5 52     |         | LDA XTNDL    |                          |
| FB91: E5 54     |         | SEC AUXL     | MOD TO XTND.             |
| FB93: AA        |         | TAX          |                          |
| FB94: A5 53     |         | LDA XTNDH    |                          |
| FB96: E5 55     |         | SEC AUXH     |                          |
| FB98: 90 06     |         | BCC DIV3     |                          |
| FB9A: 86 52     |         | STX XTNDL    |                          |
| FB9C: 85 53     |         | STA XTNDH    |                          |
| FB9E: E6 50     |         | INC ACL      |                          |
| FBA0: 88        | DIV3    | DEY          |                          |
| FBA1: D0 E3     |         | BNE DIV2     |                          |
| FBA3: 60        |         | RTS          |                          |
| FBA4: A0 00     | MD1     | LDY #S00     | ARS VAL OF AC, AUX       |
| FBA6: 84 2F     |         | STY SIGN     | WITH RESULT SIGN         |
| FBA8: A2 54     |         | LDX #AUXL    | IN LSB OF SIGN.          |
| FBA A: 20 AF FB |         | JSR MD2      |                          |
| FBAD: A2 50     |         | LDX #ACL     |                          |
| FBAF: B5 01     | MD2     | LDA LOC1,X   | X SPECIFIES AC OR AUX    |
| FBB1: 10 0D     |         | BPL MDRTS    |                          |
| FBB3: 38        |         | SEC          |                          |
| FBB4: 98        | MD3     | TYA          |                          |
| FBB5: F5 00     |         | SBC LOC0,X   | COMPL SPECIFIED REG      |
| FBB7: 95 00     |         | STA LOC0,X   | IF NEG.                  |
| FBB9: 98        |         | TYA          |                          |
| FBB A: F5 01    |         | SBC LOC1,X   |                          |
| FBBC: 95 01     |         | STA LOC1,X   |                          |
| FBBE: E6 2F     |         | INC SIGN     |                          |
| FBC0: 60        | MDRTS   | RTS          |                          |
| FBC1: 48        | BASCALC | PHA          | CALC BASE ADR IN BASL,H  |
| FBC2: 4A        |         | LSR A        | FOR GIVEN LINE NO.       |
| FBC3: 29 03     |         | AND #S03     | 0<=LINE NO.<=S17         |
| FBC5: 09 04     |         | ORA #S04     | APG=000ABCDE, GENERATE   |
| FBC7: 85 29     |         | STA BASH     | BASH=000001CD            |
| FBC9: 68        |         | PLA          | AND                      |
| FBCA: 29 18     |         | AND #S18     | BASL=EABAB000            |
| FBC C: 90 02    |         | BCC BSCLC2   |                          |
| FBC E: 69 7F    |         | ADC #S7F     |                          |
| FBD0: 85 28     | BSCLC2  | STA BASL     |                          |
| FBD2: 0A        |         | ASL A        |                          |
| FBD3: 0A        |         | ASL A        |                          |
| FBD4: 05 28     |         | ORA BASL     |                          |
| FBD6: 85 28     |         | STA BASL     |                          |
| FBD8: 60        |         | RTS          |                          |
| FBD9: C9 87     | BELL1   | CMP #S87     | BELL CHAP? (CNTRL-G)     |
| FBD B: D0 12    |         | BNE RTS2B    | NO, RETURN               |
| FBD D: A9 40    |         | LDA #S40     | DELAY .01 SECONDS        |
| FBD F: 20 A8 FC |         | JSP WAIT     |                          |
| FBE2: A0 C0     |         | LDY #SC0     |                          |
| FBE4: A9 0C     | BELL2   | LDA #S0C     | TOGGLE SPEAKER AT        |
| FBE6: 20 A8 FC  |         | JSP WAIT     | 1 KHZ FOR .1 SEC.        |
| FBE9: AD 30 C0  |         | LDA SPKR     |                          |
| FBE C: 88       |         | DEY          |                          |
| FBED: D0 F5     |         | BNE BELL2    |                          |
| FBEF: 60        | RTS2B   | RTS          |                          |
| FBF0: A4 24     | STOADV  | LDY CH       | CURSER H INDEX TO Y-REG  |
| FBF2: 91 28     |         | STA (BASL),Y | STOR CHAR IN LINE        |
| FBF4: E6 24     | ADVANCE | INC CH       | INCREMENT CURSER H INDEX |
| FBF6: A5 24     |         | LDA CH       | (MOVE RIGHT)             |
| FBF8: C5 21     |         | CMP WNDWDTH  | BEYOND WINDOW WIDTH?     |
| FBF A: B0 66    |         | CS CR        | YES TO NEXT LINE         |
| FBF C: 60       | RTS3    | RTS          | NO, RETURN               |
| FBF D: C9 A0    | VIDOUT  | CMP #SA0     | CONTROL CHAP?            |
| FBF F: B0 EF    |         | CS STOADV    | NO, OUTPUT IT.           |
| FC01: A8        |         | TAY          | INVERSE VIDEO?           |
| FC02: 10 5C     |         | BPL STOADV   | YES, OUTPUT IT.          |
| FC04: C9 8D     |         | CMP #S8D     | CR?                      |
| FC06: F0 5A     |         | BEQ CR       | YES.                     |
| FC08: C9 8A     |         | CMP #S8A     | LINE FEED?               |
| FC0 A: F0 5A    |         | BEQ LF       | IF SO, DO IT.            |
| FC0 C: C9 88    |         | CMP #S88     | BACK SPACE? (CNTRL-H)    |
| FC0 E: D0 C9    |         | BNE BELL1    | NO, CHECK FOR BELL.      |
| FC10: C6 24     | BS      | DEC CH       | DECREMENT CURSER H INDEX |
| FC12: 10 E8     |         | BPL RTS3     | IF POS, OK. ELSE MOVE UP |
| FC14: A5 21     |         | LDA WNDWDTH  | SET CH TO WNDWDTH-1      |
| FC16: 85 24     |         | STA CH       |                          |
| FC18: C6 24     |         | DEC CH       | (RIGHTMOST SCREEN POS)   |
| FC1 A: A5 22    | UP      | LDA WNDTOP   | CURSER V INDEX           |
| FC1 C: C5 25    |         | CMP CV       |                          |

|             |          |                |                                     |
|-------------|----------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| FC1E: B0 0B |          | BCS RTS4       | IF TOP LINE THEN RETURN             |
| FC20: C6 25 |          | DEC CV         | DECR CURSER V-INDEX                 |
| FC22: A5 25 | VTAB     | LDA CV         | GET CURSER V-INDEX                  |
| FC24: 20 C1 | FB VTA9Z | JSR PASCALC    | GENERATE BASE ADDR                  |
| FC27: 65 20 |          | ADC WNDLFT     | ADD WINDOW LEFT INDEX               |
| FC29: 85 28 |          | STA BASL       | TO BASL                             |
| FC2B: 60    | PTS4     | PTS            |                                     |
| FC2C: 49 C0 | ESC1     | BOR #SC0       | ESC?                                |
| FC2E: F0 28 |          | REQ HOME       | IF SO, DO HOME AND CLEAR            |
| FC30: 69 FD |          | ADC #SFD       | ESC-A OR B CHECK                    |
| FC32: 90 C0 |          | BCC ADVANCE    | A, ADVANCE                          |
| FC34: F0 DA |          | BEO BS         | B, BACKSPACE                        |
| FC36: 69 FD |          | ADC #SFD       | ESC-C OR D CHECK                    |
| FC38: 90 2C |          | BCC LF         | C, DOWN                             |
| FC3A: F0 DE |          | BEO UP         | D, GO UP                            |
| FC3C: 69 FD |          | ADC #SFD       | ESC-E OR F CHECK                    |
| FC3E: 90 5C |          | BCC CLREOL     | E, CLEAR TO END OF LINE             |
| FC40: D0 E9 |          | BNE RTS4       | NOT F, RETURN                       |
| FC42: A4 24 | CLREOP   | LDY CH         | CURSOR H TO Y INDEX                 |
| FC44: A5 25 |          | LDA CV         | CURSOR V TO A-REGISTER              |
| FC46: 48    | CLEOP1   | PHA            | SAVE CURRENT LINE ON STK            |
| FC47: 20 24 | FC       | JSR VTA9Z      | CALC BASE ADDRESS                   |
| FC4A: 20 9E | FC       | JSR CLEOLZ     | CLEAR TO EOL, SET CARRY             |
| FC4D: A0 00 |          | LDY #S00       | CLEAR FROM H INDEX=0 FOR REST       |
| FC4F: 68    |          | PLA            | INCREMENT CURRENT LINE              |
| FC50: 69 00 |          | ADC #S00       | (CARRY IS SET)                      |
| FC52: C5 23 |          | CMP WNDPTH     | DONE TO BOTTOM OF WINDOW?           |
| FC54: 90 F0 |          | BCC CLEOP1     | NO, KEEP CLEARING LINES             |
| FC56: B0 CA |          | BCS VTA9Z      | YES, TAB TO CURRENT LINE            |
| FC58: A5 22 | HOME     | LDA WNDTOP     | INIT CURSOR V                       |
| FC5A: 85 25 |          | STA CV         | AND H-INDICES                       |
| FC5C: A0 00 |          | LDY #S00       |                                     |
| FC5E: 84 24 |          | STY CH         | THEN CLEAR TO END OF PAGE           |
| FC60: F0 E4 |          | BEO CLEOP1     |                                     |
| FC62: A9 00 | CR       | LDA #S00       | CURSOR TO LEFT OF INDEX             |
| FC64: 85 24 |          | STA CH         | (RET CURSOR H=0)                    |
| FC66: E6 25 | LF       | INC CV         | INCR CURSOR V (DOWN 1 LINE)         |
| FC68: A5 25 |          | LDA CV         |                                     |
| FC6A: C5 23 |          | CMP WNDPTH     | OFF SCREEN?                         |
| FC6C: 90 B6 |          | BCC VTA9Z      | NO, SET BASE ADDR                   |
| FC6E: C6 25 |          | DEC CV         | DECR CURSOR V (BACK TO BOTTOM LINE) |
| FC70: A5 22 | SCROLL   | LDA WNDTOP     | START AT TOP OF SCRL WNDW           |
| FC72: 48    |          | PHA            |                                     |
| FC73: 20 24 | FC       | JSR VTA9Z      | GENERATE BASE ADDRESS               |
| FC76: A5 28 | SCRL1    | LDA BASL       | COPY BASL, H                        |
| FC78: 85 2A |          | STA BAS2L      | TO BAS2L, H                         |
| FC7A: A5 29 |          | LDA BASH       |                                     |
| FC7C: 85 2B |          | STA BAS2H      |                                     |
| FC7E: A4 21 |          | LDY WNDWDTH    | INIT Y TO RIGHTMOST INDEX           |
| FC80: 88    |          | DEY            | OF SCROLLING WINDOW                 |
| FC81: 68    |          | PLA            |                                     |
| FC82: 69 01 |          | ADC #S01       | INCR LINE NUMBER                    |
| FC84: C5 23 |          | CMP WNDPTH     | DONE?                               |
| FC86: 80 0D |          | BCS SCRL3      | YES, FINISH                         |
| FC88: 48    |          | PHA            |                                     |
| FC89: 20 24 | FC       | JSR VTA9Z      | FORM BASL, H (BASE ADDR)            |
| FC8C: B1 28 | SCRL2    | LDA (BASL), Y  | MOVE A CHR UP ON LINE               |
| FC8E: 91 2A |          | STA (BAS2L), Y |                                     |
| FC90: 88    |          | DEY            | NEXT CHAR OF LINE                   |
| FC91: 10 F9 |          | BPL SCRL2      |                                     |
| FC93: 30 E1 |          | BMI SCRL1      | NEXT LINE                           |
| FC95: A0 00 | SCRL3    | LDY #S00       | CLEAR BOTTOM LINE                   |
| FC97: 20 9E | FC       | JSR CLEOLZ     | GET BASE ADDR FOR BOTTOM LINE       |
| FC9A: B0 86 |          | BCS VTA9Z      | CARRY IS SET                        |
| FC9C: A4 24 | CLREOL   | LDY CH         | CURSOR H INDEX                      |
| FC9E: A9 A0 | CLEOLZ   | LDA #SA0       |                                     |
| FCA0: 91 28 | CLEOL2   | STA (BASL), Y  | STORE BLANKS FROM 'HERE'            |
| FCA2: C8    |          | INY            | TO END OF LINES (WNDWDTH)           |
| FCA3: C4 21 |          | CPY WNDWDTH    |                                     |
| FCA5: 90 F9 |          | BCC CLEOL2     |                                     |
| FCA7: 60    |          | PTS            |                                     |
| FCA8: 38    | WAIT     | SEC            |                                     |
| FCA9: 48    | WAIT2    | PHA            |                                     |
| FCAA: E9 01 | WAIT3    | SBC #S01       |                                     |
| FCAC: D0 FC |          | PNE WAIT3      | 1.0204 USEC                         |
| FCAE: 68    |          | PLA            | (13+2712*A+512*A*A)                 |
| FCAF: E9 01 |          | SBC #S01       |                                     |
| FCB1: D0 F6 |          | BNE WAIT2      |                                     |
| FCB3: 60    |          | PTS            |                                     |
| FCB4: E6 42 | NXTA4    | INC A4L        | INCR 2-BYTE A4                      |
| FCB6: D0 02 |          | PNE NXTA1      | AND A1                              |
| FCB8: E6 43 |          | INC A4H        |                                     |
| FCBA: A5 3C | NXTA1    | LDA A1L        | INCR 2-BYTE A1                      |
| FCBC: C5 3E |          | CMP A2L        |                                     |
| FCBE: A5 3D |          | LDA A1H        | AND COMPARE TO A2                   |

|                |        |              |                                |
|----------------|--------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| FCC0: E5 3F    |        | SEC A2h      |                                |
| FCC2: E6 3C    |        | INC A1L      | (CARRY SET IF >=)              |
| FCC4: D0 02    |        | BNE RTS4B    |                                |
| FCC6: E6 3D    |        | INC A1H      |                                |
| FCC8: 60       | RTS4B  | RTS          |                                |
| FCC9: A0 4B    | HEADR  | LDY #S4P     | WRITE A*256 'LONG 1'           |
| FCCB: 20 DB FC |        | JSR ZERDLY   | HALF CYCLES                    |
| FCCD: D0 F9    |        | BNE HEADP    | (650 USEC EACH)                |
| FCD0: 69 FE    |        | ADC #SFF     |                                |
| FCD2: E0 F5    |        | BCE HEADR    | THEN A 'SHORT 0'               |
| FCD4: A0 21    |        | LDY #S21     | (400 USEC)                     |
| FCD6: 20 DB FC | WRBIT  | JSR ZERDLY   | WRITE TWO HALF CYCLES          |
| FCD9: C8       |        | INY          | OF 250 USEC ('0')              |
| FCD A: C8      |        | INY          | OR 500 USEC ('0')              |
| FCD B: 88      | ZERDLY | DEY          |                                |
| FCD C: D0 FD   |        | BNE ZERDLY   |                                |
| FCD E: 90 05   |        | ACC WRTAPE   | Y IS COUNT FOR                 |
| FCE0: A0 32    |        | LDY #S32     | TIMING LOOP                    |
| FCE2: 88       | ONEDLY | DEY          |                                |
| FCE3: D0 FD    |        | BNE ONEDLY   |                                |
| FCE5: AC 20 C0 | WRTAPE | LDY TAPEOUT  |                                |
| FCE8: A0 2C    |        | LDY #S2C     |                                |
| FCEA: CA       |        | DEX          |                                |
| FCEB: 60       |        | RTS          |                                |
| FCEC: A2 08    | RDRYTE | LDX #S08     | 8 BITS TO READ                 |
| FCEE: 48       | RDBYT2 | PHA          | READ TWO TRANSITIONS           |
| FCEF: 20 FA FC |        | JSP RD2BIT   | (FIND EDGE)                    |
| FCF2: 68       |        | PLA          |                                |
| FCF3: 2A       |        | ROL A        | NEXT BIT                       |
| FCF4: A0 3A    |        | LDY #S3A     | COUNT FOR SAMPLES              |
| FCF6: CA       |        | DEX          |                                |
| FCF7: D0 F5    |        | BNE RDBYT2   |                                |
| FCF9: 60       |        | RTS          |                                |
| FCFA: 20 FD FC | RD2BIT | JSR RD3IT    |                                |
| FCFD: 88       | RDPIT  | DEY          | DECR Y UNTIL                   |
| FCFE: AD 60 C0 |        | LDA TAPEIN   | TAPE TRANSITION                |
| FD01: 45 2F    |        | EOR LASTIN   |                                |
| FD03: 10 F8    |        | BPL RDBIT    |                                |
| FD05: 45 2F    |        | EOR LASTIN   |                                |
| FD07: 85 2F    |        | STA LASTIN   |                                |
| FD09: C0 80    |        | CPY #S80     | SET CARRY ON Y-REG.            |
| FD0B: 60       |        | RTS          |                                |
| FD0C: A4 24    | RDRKEY | LDY CH       |                                |
| FD0E: B1 28    |        | LDA (BASL),Y | SET SCREEN TO FLASH            |
| FD10: 48       |        | PHA          |                                |
| FD11: 29 3F    |        | AND #S3F     |                                |
| FD13: 09 40    |        | ORA #S40     |                                |
| FD15: 91 28    |        | STA (EASL),Y |                                |
| FD17: 68       |        | PLA          |                                |
| FD18: 6C 38 00 |        | JMP (KSNL)   | GO TO USER KEY-IN              |
| FD1E: E6 4E    | KEYIN  | INC RNDL     |                                |
| FD1D: D0 02    |        | BNE KEYIN2   | INCR RND NUMBER                |
| FD1F: E6 4F    |        | INC RNDH     |                                |
| FD21: 2C 00 C0 | KEYIN2 | BIT KBD      | KEY DOWN?                      |
| FD24: 10 F5    |        | BPL KEYIN    | LOOP                           |
| FD26: 91 28    |        | STA (BASL),Y | REPLACE FLASHING SCREEN        |
| FD28: AD 00 C0 |        | LDA KFD      | GET KEYCODE                    |
| FD2B: 2C 10 C0 |        | BIT KRDSTP2  | CLR KEY STROBE                 |
| FD2E: 60       |        | RTS          |                                |
| FD2F: 20 0C FD | ESC    | JSR PDKEY    | GET KEYCODE                    |
| FD32: 20 2C FC |        | JSR ESC1     | HANDLE ESC FUNC.               |
| FD35: 20 0C FD | RDCHAR | JSP PDKEY    | READ KEY                       |
| FD38: C9 9B    |        | CMP #S93     | ESC?                           |
| FD3A: F0 F3    |        | BEQ ESC      | YES, DON'T RETURN              |
| FD3C: 60       |        | RTS          |                                |
| FD3D: A5 32    | NOTCR  | LDA INVFLG   |                                |
| FD3F: 48       |        | PHA          |                                |
| FD40: A9 FF    |        | LDA #SFF     |                                |
| FD42: 85 32    |        | STA INVFLG   | ECHO USER LINE                 |
| FD44: BD 00 02 |        | LDA IN,X     | NON INVERSE                    |
| FD47: 20 ED FD |        | JSR COUT     |                                |
| FD4A: 68       |        | PLA          |                                |
| FD4B: 85 32    |        | STA INVFLG   |                                |
| FD4D: BD 00 02 |        | LDA IN,X     |                                |
| FD50: C9 88    |        | CMP #S88     | CHECK FOR EDIT KEYS            |
| FD52: F0 1D    |        | BEQ BCKSPC   | BS, CTRL-X.                    |
| FD54: C9 98    |        | CMP #S98     |                                |
| FD56: F0 0A    |        | BEQ CANCEL   |                                |
| FD58: E0 F8    |        | CPX #SFB     | MARGIN?                        |
| FD5A: 90 03    |        | BCC NOTCR1   |                                |
| FD5C: 20 3A FF |        | JSR RELL     | YES, SOUND BELL                |
| FD5F: E8       | NOTCR1 | INX          | ADVANCE INPUT INDEX            |
| FD60: D0 13    |        | BNE NXTCHAR  |                                |
| FD62: A9 DC    | CANCEL | LDA #SDC     | BACKSLASH AFTER CANCELLED LINE |
| FD64: 20 ED FD |        | JSR COUT     |                                |



|                |         |     |          |                               |
|----------------|---------|-----|----------|-------------------------------|
| FD67: 20 8E FD | GETLNZ  | JSR | CROUT    | OUTPUT CR                     |
| FD6A: A5 33    | GETLN   | LDA | PROMPT   |                               |
| FD6C: 20 ED FD |         | JSR | COUT     | OUTPUT PROMPT CHAR            |
| FD6F: A2 01    |         | LDX | *\$01    | INIT INPUT INDEX              |
| FD71: 8A       | ECKSPC  | TXA |          | WILL *\$ACKSPACE TO 0         |
| FD72: F0 F3    |         | SEQ | GETLNZ   |                               |
| FD74: CA       |         | DEX |          |                               |
| FD75: 20 35 FD | NXTCHAR | JSP | PDCHAR   |                               |
| FD78: C9 95    |         | CMP | *PICK    | USE SCREEN CHAR               |
| FD7A: D0 02    |         | BNE | CAPTST   | FOR CTRL-U                    |
| FD7C: 81 28    |         | LDA | (BASL),Y |                               |
| FD7E: C9 E0    | CAPTST  | CMP | *\$E0    |                               |
| FD80: 90 02    |         | BCC | ADDINP   | CONVERT TO CAPS               |
| FD82: 29 DF    |         | AND | *\$0F    |                               |
| FD84: 9D 00 02 | ADDINP  | STA | IN,X     | ADD TO INPUT BUF              |
| FD87: C9 8D    |         | CMP | *\$8D    |                               |
| FD89: D0 B2    |         | BNE | NOTCR    |                               |
| FD8B: 20 9C FC |         | JSR | CLPEOL   | CLR TO EOL IF CR              |
| FD8E: A9 8D    | CROUT   | LDA | *\$8D    |                               |
| FD90: D0 5B    |         | BNE | COUT     |                               |
| FD92: A4 3D    | PRAI    | LDY | A1H      | PRINT CR,A1 IN HEX            |
| FD94: A6 3C    |         | LDX | A1L      |                               |
| FD96: 20 8E FD | PRYX2   | JSR | CROUT    |                               |
| FD99: 20 40 F9 |         | JSR | PRJTYX   |                               |
| FD9C: A0 00    |         | LDY | *\$00    |                               |
| FD9E: A9 AD    |         | LDA | *\$AD    | PRINT '-'                     |
| FDA0: 4C ED FD |         | JMP | COUT     |                               |
| FDA3: A5 3C    | XAM8    | LDA | A1L      |                               |
| FDA5: 09 07    |         | ORA | *\$07    | SET TO FINISH AT              |
| FDA7: 85 3E    |         | STA | A2L      | MOD 2=7                       |
| FDA9: A5 3D    |         | LDA | A1H      |                               |
| FDA8: 85 3F    |         | STA | A2H      |                               |
| FDA0: A5 3C    | MOD8CHK | LDA | A1L      |                               |
| FDAF: 29 07    |         | AND | *\$07    |                               |
| FDB1: D0 03    |         | BNE | DATAOUT  |                               |
| FDB3: 20 92 FD | XAM     | JSR | PRAI     |                               |
| FDB6: A9 A0    | DATAOUT | LDA | *\$A0    |                               |
| FDB8: 20 ED FD |         | JSR | COUT     | OUTPUT BLANK                  |
| FDBB: E1 3C    |         | LDA | (A1L),Y  |                               |
| FDBD: 20 DA FD |         | JSR | PRBYTE   | OUTPUT BYTE IN HEX            |
| FDC0: 20 BA FC |         | JSR | NXTAI    |                               |
| FDC3: 90 E8    |         | BCC | MOD8CHK  | CHECK IF TIME TO,             |
| FDC5: 60       | RTS4C   | RTS |          | PRINT ADDR                    |
| FDC6: 4A       | XAMPM   | LSR | A        | DETERMINE IF MON              |
| FDC7: 90 EA    |         | BCC | XAM      | MODE IS XAM                   |
| FDC9: 4A       |         | LSR | A        | ADD, OR SUB                   |
| FDCA: 4A       |         | LSR | A        |                               |
| FDCB: A5 3E    |         | LDA | A2L      |                               |
| FDCD: 90 02    |         | BCC | ADD      |                               |
| FDCF: 49 FF    |         | EOR | *\$FF    | SUB: FORM 2'S COMPLEMENT      |
| FDD1: 65 3C    | ADD     | ADC | A1L      |                               |
| FDD3: 48       |         | PHA |          |                               |
| FDD4: A9 BD    |         | LDA | *\$BD    |                               |
| FDD6: 20 ED FD |         | JSR | COUT     | PRINT '=', THEN RESULT        |
| FDD9: 68       |         | PLA |          |                               |
| FDDA: 48       | PRBYTE  | PHA |          | PRINT BYTE AS 2 HEX           |
| FDCB: 4A       |         | LSR | A        | DIGITS, DESTROYS A-REG        |
| FDDC: 4A       |         | LSR | A        |                               |
| FDDD: 4A       |         | LSR | A        |                               |
| FDDF: 20 E5 FD |         | JSR | PRHEX2   |                               |
| FDE2: 68       |         | PLA |          |                               |
| FDE3: 29 0F    | PRHEX   | AND | *\$0F    | PRINT HEX DIG IN A-REG        |
| FDE5: 09 B0    | PRHEX2  | ORA | *\$B0    | LSB'S                         |
| FDE7: C9 BA    |         | CMP | *\$BA    |                               |
| FDE9: 90 02    |         | BCC | COUT     |                               |
| FDEB: 69 06    |         | ADC | *\$06    |                               |
| FDED: 6C 36 00 | COUT    | JMP | (CSWL)   | VECTOR TO USER OUTPUT ROUTINE |
| FDF0: C9 A0    | COUT1   | CMP | *\$A0    |                               |
| FDF2: 90 02    |         | BCC | COUT2    | DON'T OUTPUT CTRL'S INVERSE   |
| FDF4: 25 32    |         | AND | INVFLG   | MASK WITH INVERSE FLAG        |
| FDF6: 84 35    | COUT2   | STY | YSAV1    | SAV Y-REG                     |
| FDF8: 48       |         | PHA |          | SAV A-REG                     |
| FDF9: 20 FD FB |         | JSR | VIDOUT   | OUTPUT A-REG AS ASCII         |
| FDFC: 68       |         | PLA |          | RESTORE A-REG                 |
| FDFD: A4 35    |         | LDY | YSAV1    | AND Y-REG                     |
| FDFE: 60       |         | RTS |          | THEN RETURN                   |
| FE00: C6 34    | BLI     | DEC | YSAV     |                               |
| FE02: F0 9F    |         | BEQ | XAM8     | BLANK TO MON                  |
| FE04: CA       | BLANK   | DEX |          | AFTER BLANK                   |
| FE05: D0 16    |         | BNE | SETMDZ   | DATA STORE MODE?              |
| FE07: C9 BA    |         | CMP | *\$BA    | NO, XAM, ADD, OR SUB          |
| FE09: D0 BB    |         | BNE | XAMPM    | KEEP IN STORE MODE            |
| FE0B: 85 31    | STOR    | STA | MODE     |                               |
| FE0D: A5 3E    |         | LDA | A2L      |                               |

|                |         |                |                             |
|----------------|---------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| FE0F: 91 40    |         | STA (A3L),Y    | STORE AS LOW BYTE AS (A3) - |
| FE11: 86 40    |         | INC A3L        |                             |
| FE13: D0 02    |         | BNE RTS5       | INCR A3, RETURN             |
| FE15: E6 41    |         | INC A3H        |                             |
| FE17: 60       | RTS5    | RTS            |                             |
| FE18: A4 34    | SETMODE | LDY YSAV       | SAVE CONVERTED '!', '+',    |
| FE1A: B9 FF 01 |         | LDA IN-1,Y     | '-', '.', AS MODE.          |
| FE1D: 85 31    | SETMDZ  | STA MODF       |                             |
| FE1F: 60       |         | RTS            |                             |
| FE20: A2 01    | LT      | LDX #S01       |                             |
| FE22: B5 3E    | LT2     | LDA A2L,X      | COPY A2 (2 BYTES) TO        |
| FE24: 95 42    |         | STA A4L,X      | A4 AND A5                   |
| FE26: 95 44    |         | STA A5L,X      |                             |
| FE28: CA       |         | DEX            |                             |
| FE29: 10 F7    |         | BPL LT2        |                             |
| FE2B: 60       |         | RTS            |                             |
| FE2C: B1 3C    | MOVE    | LDA (A1L),Y    | MOVE (A1 TO A2) TO          |
| FE2E: 91 42    |         | STA (A4L),Y    | (A4)                        |
| FE30: 20 84 FC |         | JSR NXTA4      |                             |
| FE33: 90 F7    |         | BCC MOVE       |                             |
| FE35: 60       |         | RTS            |                             |
| FE36: B1 3C    | VFY     | LDA (A1L),Y    | VERIFY (A1 TO A2) WITH      |
| FE38: D1 42    |         | CMF (A4L),Y    | (A4)                        |
| FE3A: F0 1C    |         | BEO VFYOK      |                             |
| FE3C: 20 92 FD |         | JSR PRA1       |                             |
| FE3F: B1 3C    |         | LDA (A1L),Y    |                             |
| FE41: 20 DA FD |         | JSR PRBYTE     |                             |
| FE44: A9 A0    |         | LDA #SA0       |                             |
| FE46: 20 ED FD |         | JSR COUT       |                             |
| FE49: A9 A8    |         | LDA #SA8       |                             |
| FE4B: 20 ED FD |         | JSR COUT       |                             |
| FE4E: B1 42    |         | LDA (A4L),Y    |                             |
| FE50: 20 DA FD |         | JSR PRBYTE     |                             |
| FE53: A9 A9    |         | LDA #SA9       |                             |
| FE55: 20 ED FD |         | JSR COUT       |                             |
| FE58: 20 84 FC | VFYOK   | JSR NXTA4      |                             |
| FE5B: 90 D9    |         | BCC VFY        |                             |
| FE5D: 60       |         | RTS            |                             |
| FE5E: 20 75 FE | LIST    | JSR A1PC       | MOVE A1 (2 BYTES) TO        |
| FE61: A9 14    |         | LDA #S14       | PC IF SPEC'D AND            |
| FE63: 48       | LIST2   | PHA            | DISSEMBLE 20 INSTRS         |
| FE64: 20 D0 F8 |         | JSR INSTDSP    |                             |
| FE67: 20 53 F9 |         | JSR PCADJ      | ADJUST PC EACH INSTR        |
| FE6A: 85 3A    |         | STA PCL        |                             |
| FE6C: 84 3B    |         | STY PCN        |                             |
| FE6E: 68       |         | PLA            |                             |
| FE6F: 38       |         | SEC            |                             |
| FE70: E9 01    |         | SBC #S01       | NEXT OF 20 INSTRS           |
| FE72: D0 EF    |         | BNE LIST2      |                             |
| FE74: 60       |         | RTS            |                             |
| FE75: 8A       | A1PC    | TXA            | IF USER SPEC'D ADR          |
| FE76: F0 07    |         | SEC            | COPY FROM A1 TO PC          |
| FE78: B5 3C    | A1PCLP  | LDA A1L,X      |                             |
| FE7A: 95 3A    |         | STA PCL,X      |                             |
| FE7C: CA       |         | DEX            |                             |
| FE7D: 10 F9    |         | SPL A1PCLP     |                             |
| FE7F: 60       | A1PCRTS | RTS            |                             |
| FE80: A0 3F    | SETINV  | LDY #S3F       | SET FOR INVERSE VID         |
| FE82: D0 02    |         | BNE SETIFLG    | VIA COUT1                   |
| FE84: A0 FF    | SETNORM | LDY #SFF       | SET FOR NORMAL VID          |
| FE86: 84 32    | SETIFLG | STY INVFLG     |                             |
| FE88: 60       |         | RTS            |                             |
| FE89: A9 00    | SETKRD  | LDA #S00       | SIMULATE PORT #0 INPUT      |
| FE8B: 85 3E    | INPORT  | STA A2L        | SPECIFIED (KEYIN ROUTINE)   |
| FE8D: A2 38    | INPRT   | LDX #KSWL      |                             |
| FE8F: A0 1B    |         | LDY #KEYIN     |                             |
| FE91: D0 08    |         | BNE IOPRT      |                             |
| FE93: A9 00    | SETVID  | LDA #S00       | SIMULATE PORT #0 OUTPUT     |
| FE95: 85 3E    | OUTPORT | STA A2L        | SPECIFIED (COUT1 ROUTINE)   |
| FE97: A2 36    | OUTPRT  | LDX #CSWL      |                             |
| FE99: A0 F0    |         | LDY #COUT1     |                             |
| FE9B: A5 3E    | IOPT    | LDA A2L        | SET RAM IN/OUT VECTORS      |
| FE9D: 29 0F    |         | AND #S0F       |                             |
| FE9F: F0 06    |         | BEO IOPRT1     |                             |
| FEA1: 09 C0    |         | ORA #IOADR/256 |                             |
| FEA3: A0 00    |         | LDY #S00       |                             |
| FEA5: F0 02    |         | BEQ IOPRT2     |                             |
| FEA7: A9 FD    | IOPT1   | LDA #COUT1/256 |                             |
| FEA9: 94 00    | IOPT2   | STY LOCO,X     |                             |
| FEAB: 95 01    |         | STA LOCL,X     |                             |
| FEAD: 60       |         | PTS            |                             |
| FEAE: EA       |         | NOP            |                             |
| FEAF: EA       |         | NOP            |                             |
| FEBO: 4C 00 E0 | XEBASIC | JMP BASIC      | TO BASIC WITH SCRATCH       |
| FEB3: 4C 03 E0 | BASCONT | JMP BASIC2     | CONTINUE BASIC              |

|       |    |    |    |         |     |         |                             |
|-------|----|----|----|---------|-----|---------|-----------------------------|
| FEB6: | 20 | 75 | FE | GO      | JSR | ALPC    | ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D         |
| FEB9: | 20 | 3F | FF |         | JSP | RESTOPE | RESTORE META REGS           |
| FEBC: | 6C | 3A | 00 |         | JMP | (PC)    | GO TO USER SUBR             |
| FEBF: | 4C | D7 | FA | REGZ    | JVP | REGDSP  | TO REG DISPLAY              |
| FEC2: | C6 | 34 |    | TPACE   | DEC | YSAV    |                             |
| FEC4: | 20 | 75 | FE | STEPZ   | JSR | ALPC    | ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D         |
| FEC7: | 4C | 43 | FA |         | JMP | STFP    | TAKE ONE STEP               |
| FECA: | 4C | F8 | 03 | USP     | JVP | USRADR  | TO USP SUBR AT USRADR       |
| FECD: | A9 | 40 |    | WRITE   | LDA | #540    |                             |
| FECF: | 20 | C9 | FC |         | JSR | HEADR   | WRITE 10-SEC HEADER         |
| FED2: | A0 | 27 |    |         | LDY | #S27    |                             |
| FED4: | A2 | 00 |    | WR1     | LDX | *S00    |                             |
| FED6: | 41 | 3C |    |         | EOP | (ALL,X) |                             |
| FED8: | 48 |    |    |         | PHA |         |                             |
| FED9: | A1 | 3C |    |         | LDA | (ALL,X) |                             |
| FEDB: | 20 | ED | FE |         | JSR | WRBYTE  |                             |
| FEDD: | 20 | BA | FC |         | JSR | NXTAL   |                             |
| FEEL: | A0 | 1D |    |         | LDY | #S1D    |                             |
| FEES: | 68 |    |    |         | PLA |         |                             |
| FEF4: | 90 | 2E |    |         | BCC | WR1     |                             |
| FEF6: | A0 | 22 |    |         | LDY | #S22    |                             |
| FEF8: | 20 | ED | FE |         | JSR | WRBYTE  |                             |
| FEF9: | F0 | 40 |    |         | BEC | FELL    |                             |
| FEED: | A2 | 10 |    | WRBYTE  | LDX | #S10    |                             |
| FEFF: | 0A |    |    | WRBYT2  | ASL | A       |                             |
| FEF0: | 20 | D6 | FC |         | JSR | WRBIT   |                             |
| FEF3: | D0 | FA |    |         | BNE | WRBYT2  |                             |
| FEF5: | 60 |    |    |         | RTS |         |                             |
| FEF6: | 20 | 00 | FE | CRMON   | JSP | BL1     | HANDLE CR AS BLANK          |
| FEF9: | 68 |    |    |         | PLA |         | THEN POP STACK              |
| FEFA: | 68 |    |    |         | PLA |         | AND RTN TO MON              |
| FEFB: | D0 | 6C |    |         | BNE | MONZ    |                             |
| FEFD: | 20 | FA | FC | READ    | JSR | RD2BIT  | FIND TAPEIN EDGE            |
| FF00: | A9 | 16 |    |         | LOA | #S16    |                             |
| FF02: | 20 | C9 | FC |         | JSR | HEADR   | DELAY 3.5 SECONDS           |
| FF05: | 85 | 2E |    |         | STA | CHKSUM  | INIT CHKSUM=SFF             |
| FF07: | 20 | FA | FC |         | JSR | RD2BIT  | FIND TAPEIN EDGE            |
| FF0A: | A0 | 24 |    | RD2     | LDY | #S24    | LOOK FOR SYNC BIT           |
| FF0C: | 20 | FD | FC |         | JSR | RD2BIT  | (SHORT 0)                   |
| FF0F: | 80 | F9 |    |         | BCC | RD2     | LOOP UNTIL FOUND            |
| FF11: | 20 | FD | FC |         | JSR | RD2BIT  | SKIP SECOND SYNC H-CYCLE    |
| FF14: | A0 | 3B |    |         | LDY | #S3B    | INDEX FOR 0/1 TEST          |
| FF16: | 20 | EC | FC | RD3     | JSR | RDBYTE  | READ A BYTE                 |
| FF19: | 81 | 3C |    |         | STA | (ALL,X) | STORE AT (A1)               |
| FF1B: | 45 | 2E |    |         | EOR | CHKSUM  |                             |
| FF1D: | 85 | 2E |    |         | STA | CHKSUM  | UPDATE RUNNING CHKSUM       |
| FF1F: | 20 | BA | FC |         | JSR | NXTAL   | INCR A1, COMPARE TO A2      |
| FF22: | A0 | 35 |    |         | LDY | #S35    | COMPENSATE 0/1 INDEX        |
| FF24: | 90 | F0 |    |         | BCC | RD3     | LOOP UNTIL DONE             |
| FF26: | 20 | EC | FC |         | JSR | RDBYTE  | READ CHKSUM BYTE            |
| FF29: | C5 | 2E |    |         | CMP | CHKSUM  |                             |
| FF2B: | F0 | 0D |    |         | BEQ | SELL    | GOOD, SOUND BELL AND RETURN |
| FF2D: | A9 | C5 |    | PRERR   | LDA | #SC5    |                             |
| FF2F: | 20 | ED | FD |         | JSR | COUT    | PRINT "ERR", THEN BELL      |
| FF32: | A9 | D2 |    |         | LDA | #SD2    |                             |
| FF34: | 20 | ED | FD |         | JSR | COUT    |                             |
| FF37: | 20 | ED | FD |         | JSR | COUT    |                             |
| FF3A: | A9 | 87 |    | BELL    | LDA | #S87    | OUTPUT BELL AND RETURN      |
| FF3C: | 4C | ED | FD |         | JMP | COUT    |                             |
| FF3F: | A5 | 48 |    | RESTORE | LDA | STATUS  | RESTORE 6502 REG CONTENTS   |
| FF41: | 48 |    |    |         | PHA |         | USED BY DEBUG SOFTWARE      |
| FF42: | A5 | 45 |    |         | LDA | ACC     |                             |
| FF44: | A6 | 46 |    | RESTA1  | LDX | XREG    |                             |
| FF46: | A4 | 47 |    |         | LDY | YREG    |                             |
| FF48: | 28 |    |    |         | PLP |         |                             |
| FF49: | 60 |    |    |         | RTS |         |                             |
| FF4A: | 85 | 45 |    | SAVE    | STA | ACC     | SAVE 6502 REG CONTENTS      |
| FF4C: | 86 | 46 |    | SAV1    | STX | XREG    |                             |
| FF4E: | 84 | 47 |    |         | STY | YREG    |                             |
| FF50: | 08 |    |    |         | PHP |         |                             |
| FF51: | 68 |    |    |         | PLA |         |                             |
| FF52: | 85 | 48 |    |         | STA | STATUS  |                             |
| FF54: | BA |    |    |         | TSX |         |                             |
| FF55: | 86 | 49 |    |         | STX | SPNT    |                             |
| FF57: | D8 |    |    |         | CLD |         |                             |
| FF58: | 60 |    |    |         | PTS |         |                             |
| FF59: | 20 | 84 | FE | RESET   | JSR | SETNORM | SET SCREEN MODE             |
| FF5C: | 20 | 2F | FB |         | JSR | INIT    | AND INIT KBD/SCREEN         |
| FF5F: | 20 | 93 | FE |         | JSR | SETVID  | AS I/O DEV'S                |
| FF62: | 20 | 89 | FE |         | JSR | SETKBD  |                             |
| FF65: | D8 |    |    | MON     | CLD |         | MUST SET HEX MODE!          |
| FF66: | 20 | 3A | FF |         | JSR | BELL    |                             |
| FF69: | A9 | AA |    | MONZ    | LDA | #SAA    | 'A' PROMPT FOR MON          |
| FF6B: | 85 | 33 |    |         | STA | PROMPT  |                             |
| FF6D: | 20 | 67 | FD |         | JSR | GETLNZ  | READ A LINE                 |

|                |         |                |                           |
|----------------|---------|----------------|---------------------------|
| FF70: 20 C7 FF |         | JSR 24MODE     | CLEAR MON MODE, SCAN IDX  |
| FF73: 20 A7 FF | NXTITM  | JSR GETNUM     | GET ITEM, NON-HEX         |
| FF76: 84 34    |         | STY YSAV       | CHAR IN A-REG             |
| FF78: A0 17    |         | LDY #S17       | X-REG=0 IF NO HEX INPUT   |
| FF7A: 88       | CHRSACH | DEY            |                           |
| FF7B: 30 E8    |         | BMI MON        | NOT FOUND, GO TO MON      |
| FF7D: D9 CC FF |         | CMF CHRTBL,Y   | FIND CMND CHAR IN TEL     |
| FF80: D0 FB    |         | BNE CHRSPCH    |                           |
| FF82: 20 BE FF |         | JSR TOSUB      | FOUND, CALL CORRESPONDING |
| FF85: A4 34    |         | LDY YSAV       | SUBROUTINE                |
| FF87: 4C 73 FF |         | JMP NXTITM     |                           |
| FF8A: A2 03    | DIG     | LDX #S03       |                           |
| FF8C: 0A       |         | ASL A          |                           |
| FF8D: 0A       |         | ASL A          | GOT HEX DIG,              |
| FF8E: 0A       |         | ASL A          | SHIFT INTO A2             |
| FF8F: 0A       |         | ASL A          |                           |
| FF90: 0A       | NXTBIT  | ASL A          |                           |
| FF91: 26 3E    |         | ROL A2L        |                           |
| FF93: 26 3F    |         | ROL A2H        |                           |
| FF95: CA       |         | DEX            | LEAVE X=SPX IF DIG        |
| FF96: 10 F8    |         | SPL NXTBIT     |                           |
| FF98: A5 31    | NXTEAS  | LDA MODE       |                           |
| FF9A: D0 86    |         | BNE NXTES2     | IF MODE IS ZERO           |
| FF9C: B5 3F    |         | LDA A2H,X      | THEN COPY A2 TO           |
| FF9E: 95 3D    |         | STA A1H,X      | A1 AND A3                 |
| FFA0: 95 41    |         | STA A3H,X      |                           |
| FFA2: E8       | NXTRB2  | INX            |                           |
| FFA3: F0 F3    |         | SEQ NXTRAS     |                           |
| FFA5: D0 06    |         | BNE NXTCRR     |                           |
| FFA7: A2 00    | GETNUM  | LDX #S00       | CLEAR A2                  |
| FFA9: 86 3E    |         | STX A2L        |                           |
| FFAB: 86 3F    |         | STX A2H        |                           |
| FFAD: B9 00 02 | NXTCHP  | LDA IV,Y       | GET CHAR                  |
| FFB0: C8       |         | INY            |                           |
| FFB1: 49 B0    |         | FOR #S80       |                           |
| FFB3: C9 0A    |         | CMF #S0A       |                           |
| FFB5: 90 D3    |         | BCC CIG        | IF HEX DIG, THEN          |
| FFB7: 69 86    |         | ADC #S88       |                           |
| FFB9: C9 FA    |         | CMF #SFA       |                           |
| FFB3: B0 CD    |         | BCC DIG        |                           |
| FFBD: 60       |         | RTS            |                           |
| FFBE: A9 FE    | TOSUB   | LDA #C0/256    | PUSH HIGH-ORDER           |
| FFC0: 48       |         | PHA            | SUBP ADR ON STK           |
| FFC1: B9 E3 FF |         | LDA SUBTEL,Y   | PUSH LOW ORDER            |
| FFC4: 48       |         | PHA            | SUBP ADR ON STK           |
| FFC5: A5 31    |         | LDA MODE       |                           |
| FFC7: A0 00    | ZMODE   | LDY #S00       | CLP MODE, OLD MODE        |
| FFC9: 84 31    |         | STY MODE       | TO A-REG                  |
| FFCB: 60       |         | RTS            | GO TO SUBR VIA RTS        |
| FFCC: BC       | CHRTBL  | DFB #BC        | F("CTRL-C")               |
| FFCD: B2       |         | DFB #B2        | F("CTRL-Y")               |
| FFCE: BE       |         | DFB #BE        | F("CTRL-E")               |
| FFCF: ED       |         | DFB #ED        | F("T")                    |
| FFD0: EF       |         | DFB #EF        | F("V")                    |
| FFD1: C4       |         | DFB #C4        | F("CTRL-K")               |
| FFD2: EC       |         | DFB #EC        | F("S")                    |
| FFD3: A9       |         | DFB #A9        | F("CTPL-P")               |
| FFD4: B8       |         | DFB #B8        | F("CTRL-S")               |
| FFD5: A6       |         | DFB #A6        | F("-")                    |
| FFD6: A4       |         | DFB #A4        | F("+")                    |
| FFD7: 06       |         | DFB #06        | F("#") (F=EX-OP #B0+#B9)  |
| FFD8: 95       |         | DFB #95        | F("<")                    |
| FFD9: 07       |         | DFB #07        | F(">")                    |
| FFDA: 02       |         | DFB #02        | F("I")                    |
| FFDB: 05       |         | DFB #05        | F("L")                    |
| FFDC: F0       |         | DFB #F0        | F("W")                    |
| FFDD: 00       |         | DFB #00        | F("G")                    |
| FFDE: EB       |         | DFB #EB        | F("R")                    |
| FFDF: 93       |         | DFB #93        | F(":")                    |
| FFE0: 47       |         | DFB #47        | F(".")                    |
| FFE1: C6       |         | DFB #C6        | F("CR")                   |
| FFE2: 99       |         | DFB #99        | F(BLANK)                  |
| FFE3: B2       | SUBTEL  | DFB #BASCONT-1 |                           |
| FFE4: C9       |         | DFB #USR-1     |                           |
| FFE5: BE       |         | DFB #REQZ-1    |                           |
| FFE6: C1       |         | DFB #TRACE-1   |                           |
| FFE7: 35       |         | DFB #VPY-1     |                           |
| FFE8: 8C       |         | DFB #INPRT-1   |                           |
| FFE9: C3       |         | DFB #STEPZ-1   |                           |
| FFEA: 96       |         | DFB #OUTPRT-1  |                           |
| FFEB: A2       |         | DFB #XPASIC-1  |                           |
| FFEC: 17       |         | DFB #SETMODE-1 |                           |
| FFED: 17       |         | DFB #SETMODE-1 |                           |
| FFEE: 2B       |         | DFB #MOVE-1    |                           |
| FFEF: 1F       |         | DFB #LT-1      |                           |

|          |                         |
|----------|-------------------------|
| FFF0: 83 | DFB #SETNORM-1          |
| FFF1: 7F | DFB #SETINV-1           |
| FFF2: 5D | DFB #LIST-1             |
| FFF3: CC | DFB #WRITE-1            |
| FFF4: 05 | DFB #GO-1               |
| FFF5: FC | DFB #READ-1             |
| FFF6: 17 | DFB #SETMODE-1          |
| FFF7: 17 | DFB #SETMODE-1          |
| FFF8: F5 | DFB #CRMON-1            |
| FFF9: 03 | DFB #BLANK-1            |
| FFFA: FB | DFB #NMI NMI VECTOR     |
| FFFB: 03 | DFB #NMI/256            |
| FFFC: 59 | DFB #RESET RESET VECTOR |
| FFFD: FF | DFB #RESET/256          |
| FFFE: 86 | DFB #IRQ IRQ VECTOR     |
| FFFF: FA | DFB #IRQ/256            |
|          | EQU \$3C                |

XQTNZ

```

*
* APPLE-II
* MINI-ASSEMBLER
*
* COPYRIGHT 1977 BY
* APPLE COMPUTER INC.
*
* ALL RIGHTS RESEFVED
*
* S. WOZNIAK
* A. BAUM
*

```

TITLE "APPLE-II MINI-ASSEMBLER"

```

FORMAT EPZ 52E
LENGTH EPZ 52F
MODE EPZ 531
PROMPT EPZ 533
YSAV EPZ 534
L EPZ 535
PCL EPZ 53A
PCN EPZ 53P
ALH EPZ 53D
A2L EPZ 53E
A2H EPZ 53F
A4L EPZ 542
A4H EPZ 543
PWT EPZ 544
IN EQU 5200
INSDS2 EQU 5F88E
INSTDSF EQU 5F8D0
PRBL2 EQU 5F94A
PCADJ EQU 5F953
CHAR1 EQU 5F984
CHAR2 EQU 5F98A
MNEML EQU 5F9C0
MNEAP EQU 5FA00
CURSUP EQU 5FCA
GETLNZ EQU 5FD67
COBT EQU 5FDED
BL1 EQU 5FEE0
ALPCLP EQU 5FE78
BELL EQU 5FF3A
GETNUM EQU 5FFA7
TOSUB EQU 5FFFE
Z/ODE EQU 5FFC7
CHPTBL EQU 5FFCC
ORG ORG 5F500

```

```

F500: E9 81 REL SEC 4821 IS PWT COMPATIBLE
F502: 4A LSP A WITH RELATIVE MODE?
F503: D0 14 DSE LDR3 NO.
F505: A4 3F LDY A2H
F507: A6 3E LDX A2L DOUBLE DECREMENT
F509: D0 01 BNE REL2
F50B: 88 DEY
F50C: CA REL2 DEX
F50D: 8A TXA
F50E: 18 CLC
F50F: E5 3A SBC PCL FORM ADDR-PC-2
F511: 85 3E STA A2L
F513: 10 01 BPL REL3
F515: C8 INY
F516: 98 REL3 TYA

```

|                |          |     |          |                            |
|----------------|----------|-----|----------|----------------------------|
| F517: E5 3B    |          | SBC | PCH      |                            |
| F519: D0 6B    | ERR3     | BNE | ERR      | ERROR IF >1-BYTE BRANCH    |
| F51B: A4 2F    | FINDOP   | LDY | LENGTH   |                            |
| F51D: B9 3D 00 | FNDOP2   | LDA | A1H,Y    | MOVE INST TO (PC)          |
| F520: 91 3A    |          | STA | (PCL),Y  |                            |
| F522: 88       |          | DEY |          |                            |
| F523: 10 F8    |          | BPL | FNDOP2   |                            |
| F525: 20 1A FC |          | JSR | CURSUP   |                            |
| F528: 20 1A FC |          | JSP | CURSUP   | RESTORE CURSOR             |
| F528: 20 D0 F8 |          | JSR | INSTDSP  | TYPE FORMATTED LINE        |
| F52E: 20 53 F9 |          | JSR | PCADJ    | UPDATE PC                  |
| F531: 84 3B    |          | STY | PCH      |                            |
| F533: 85 3A    |          | STA | PCL      |                            |
| F535: 4C 95 F5 |          | JMP | NXTLINE  | GET NEXT LINE              |
| F538: 20 8E FF | FAKEMON3 | JSR | TOSUB    | GO TO DELIM HANDLER        |
| F53B: A4 34    |          | LDY | YSAV     | RESTORE Y-INDEX            |
| F53D: 20 A7 FF | FAKEMON  | JSR | GETNUM   | READ PARAM                 |
| F540: 84 34    |          | STY | YSAV     | SAVE Y-INDEX               |
| F542: A0 17    |          | LDY | #S17     | INIT DELIMITER INDEX       |
| F544: 88       | FAKEMON2 | DEY |          | CHECK NEXT DELIM           |
| F545: 30 4B    |          | BMI | RESETZ   | ERR IF UNRECOGNIZED DELIM  |
| F547: D9 CC FF |          | CMP | CHRTBL,Y | COMPARE WITH DELIM TABLE   |
| F54A: D0 F8    |          | BNE | FAKEMON2 | NO MATCH                   |
| F54C: C0 15    |          | CPY | #S15     | MATCH, IS IT CR?           |
| F54E: D0 E8    |          | BNE | FAKEMON3 | NO, HANDLE IT IN MONITOR   |
| F550: A5 31    |          | LDA | MODE     |                            |
| F552: A0 00    |          | LDY | #S0      |                            |
| F554: C6 34    |          | DEC | YSAV     |                            |
| F556: 20 00 FE |          | JSR | BL1      | HANDLE CR OUTSIDE MONITOR  |
| F559: 4C 95 F5 |          | JMP | NXTLINE  |                            |
| F55C: A5 3D    | TRYNEXT  | LDA | A1H      | GET TRIAL OPCODE           |
| F55E: 20 8E F8 |          | JSR | INSDS2   | GET FMT+LENGTH FOR OPCODE  |
| F561: AA       |          | TAX |          |                            |
| F562: BD 00 FA |          | LDA | MNEMR,X  | GET LOWER MNEMONIC BYTE    |
| F565: C5 42    |          | CMP | A4L      | MATCH?                     |
| F567: D0 13    |          | BNE | NEXTOP   | NO, TRY NEXT OPCODE        |
| F569: BD C0 F9 |          | LDA | MNEML,X  | GET UPPER MNEMONIC BYTE    |
| F56C: C5 43    |          | CMP | A4H      | MATCH?                     |
| F56E: D0 0C    |          | BNE | NEXTOP   | NO, TRY NEXT OPCODE.       |
| F570: A5 44    |          | LDA | FMT      |                            |
| F572: A4 2E    |          | LDY | FORMAT   | GET TRIAL FORMAT           |
| F574: C0 9D    |          | CPY | #S9D     | TRIAL FORMAT RELATIVE?     |
| F576: F0 88    |          | BEQ | REL      | YES.                       |
| F578: C5 2E    | NREL     | CMP | FORMAT   | SAME FORMAT?               |
| F57A: F0 9F    |          | BEQ | FINDOP   | YES.                       |
| F57C: C6 3D    | NEXTOP   | DEC | A1H      | NO, TRY NEXT OPCODE        |
| F57E: D0 DC    |          | BNE | TRYNEXT  |                            |
| F580: E6 44    |          | INC | FMT      | NO MORE, TRY WITH LEN=2    |
| F582: C6 35    |          | DEC | L        | WAS L=2 ALREADY?           |
| F584: F0 D6    |          | BEQ | TRYNEXT  | NO.                        |
| F586: A4 34    | ERR      | LDY | YSAV     | YES, UNRECOGNIZED INST.    |
| F588: 98       | ERR2     | TYA |          |                            |
| F589: AA       |          | TAX |          |                            |
| F58A: 20 4A F9 |          | JSR | PRBL2    | PRINT UNDER LAST READ      |
| F58D: A9 DE    |          | LDA | #SDE     | CHAR TO INDICATE ERROR     |
| F58F: 20 ED FD |          | JSR | COUT     | POSITION.                  |
| F592: 20 3A FF | RESETZ   | JSR | BELL     |                            |
| F595: A9 A1    | NXTLINE  | LDA | #SAL     | 'I'                        |
| F597: 85 33    |          | STA | PROMPT   | INITIALIZE PROMPT          |
| F599: 20 67 FD |          | JSR | GETLNZ   | GET LINE.                  |
| F59C: 20 C7 FF |          | JSR | ZMODE    | INIT SCREEN STUFF          |
| F59F: AD 00 02 |          | LDA | IN       | GET CHAR                   |
| F5A2: C9 A0    |          | CMP | #SA0     | ASCII BLANK?               |
| F5A4: F0 13    |          | BEQ | SPACE    | YES                        |
| F5A6: C8       |          | INY |          |                            |
| F5A7: C9 A4    |          | CMP | #SA4     | ASCII 'S' IN COL 1?        |
| F5A9: F0 92    |          | BEQ | FAKEMON  | YES, SIMULATE MONITOR      |
| F5AB: 88       |          | DEY |          | NO, BACKUP A CHAR          |
| F5AC: 20 A7 FF |          | JSP | GETNUM   | GET A NUMBER               |
| F5AF: C9 93    |          | CMP | #S93     | '.' TERMINATOR?            |
| F5B1: D0 D5    | ERR4     | BNE | ERR2     | NO, ERR.                   |
| F5B3: 8A       |          | TXA |          |                            |
| F5B4: F0 D2    |          | BEQ | ERR2     | NO ADR PRECEDING COLON.    |
| F5B6: 20 78 FE |          | JSR | ALPCLP   | MOVE ADR TO PCL, PCH.      |
| F5B9: A9 03    | SPACE    | LDA | #S3      | COUNT OF CHARS IN MNEMONIC |
| F5BB: 85 3D    |          | STA | A1H      |                            |
| F5BD: 20 34 F6 | NXTMN    | JSR | GETNSP   | GET FIRST MNEM CHAR.       |
| F5C0: 0A       | NXTM     | ASL | A        |                            |
| F5C1: E9 BE    |          | SBC | #SBE     | SUBTRACT OFFSET            |
| F5C3: C9 C2    |          | CMP | #SC2     | LEGAL CHAR?                |
| F5C5: 90 C1    |          | BCC | ERR2     | NO.                        |
| F5C7: 0A       |          | ASL | A        | COMPRESS-LEFT JUSTIFY      |
| F5C8: 0A       |          | ASL | A        |                            |
| F5C9: A2 04    |          | LDX | #S4      |                            |
| F5CB: 0A       | NXTM2    | ASL | A        | DO 5 TRIPLE WORD SHIFTS    |

|                |        |             |                           |
|----------------|--------|-------------|---------------------------|
| F5CC: 26 42    |        | ROL A4L     |                           |
| F5CE: 26 43    |        | ROL A4B     |                           |
| F5D0: CA       |        | DEX         |                           |
| F5D1: 10 F8    |        | SPL NXTM2   |                           |
| F5D3: C6 3D    |        | DEC A1H     | DONE WITH 3 CHARS?        |
| F5D5: F0 F4    |        | BEQ NXTM2   | YES, BUT DO 1 MORE SHIFT  |
| F5D7: 10 E4    |        | BPL NXTMN   | NO                        |
| F5D9: A2 05    | FORM1  | LDX #55     | 5 CHARS IN ADDR MODE      |
| F5DB: 20 34 F6 | FORM2  | JSR GETNSP  | GET FIRST CHAR OF ADDR    |
| F5DE: 84 34    |        | STY YSAV    |                           |
| F5E0: DD 34 F9 |        | CMP CHAR1,X | FIRST CHAR MATCH PATTERN? |
| F5E3: D0 13    |        | BNE FORM3   | NO                        |
| F5E5: 20 34 F6 |        | JSR GETNSP  | YES, GET SECOND CHAR      |
| F5E8: DD 34 F9 |        | CMP CHAR2,X | MATCHES SECOND HALF?      |
| F5EB: F0 0D    |        | BEQ FORM5   | YES                       |
| F5ED: BD 3A F9 |        | LDA CHAR2,X | NO, IS SECOND HALF ZERO?  |
| F5F0: F0 07    |        | BEQ FORM4   | YES.                      |
| F5F2: C9 A4    |        | CMP #SA4    | NO, SECOND HALF OPTIONAL? |
| F5F4: F0 03    |        | BEQ FORM4   | YES.                      |
| F5F6: A4 34    |        | LDY YSAV    |                           |
| F5F8: 18       | FORM3  | CLC         | CLEAR BIT-NO MATCH        |
| F5F9: 88       | FORM4  | DEY         | BACK UP 1 CHAR            |
| F5FA: 26 44    | FORM5  | ROL FMT     | FORM FORMAT BYTE          |
| F5FC: E0 03    |        | CPX #S3     | TIME TO CHECK FOR ADDR.   |
| F5FE: D0 0D    |        | BNE FORM7   | NO                        |
| F600: 20 A7 FF |        | JSR GETNUM  | YES                       |
| F603: A5 3F    |        | LDA A2H     |                           |
| F605: F0 01    |        | BEQ FORM6   | HIGH-ORDER BYTE ZERO      |
| F607: E9       |        | INX         | NO, INCR FOR 2-BYTE       |
| F608: 86 35    | FORM6  | STX L       | STORE LENGTH              |
| F60A: A2 03    |        | LEX #S3     | RELOAD FORMAT INDEX       |
| F60C: 88       |        | DEY         | BACKUP A CHAR             |
| F60D: 86 3D    | FORM7  | STX A1H     | SAVE INDEX                |
| F60F: CA       |        | DEX         | DONE WITH FORMAT CHECK?   |
| F610: 10 C9    |        | SPL FORM2   | NO.                       |
| F612: A5 44    |        | LDA FMT     | YES, PUT LENGTH           |
| F614: 0A       |        | ASL A       | IN LOW BITS               |
| F615: 0A       |        | ASL A       |                           |
| F616: 05 15    |        | ORA L       |                           |
| F618: C9 20    |        | CMP #S20    |                           |
| F61A: B0 06    |        | RCS FORM8   | ADD 'S' IF NONZERO LENGTH |
| F61C: A6 35    |        | LDX L       | AND DON'T ALREADY HAVE IT |
| F61E: F0 02    |        | BEQ FORM8   |                           |
| F620: 09 80    |        | ORA #S80    |                           |
| F622: 85 44    | FORM8  | STA FMT     |                           |
| F624: 84 34    |        | STY YSAV    |                           |
| F626: B9 00 02 |        | LDA IN,Y    | GET NEXT NONBLANK         |
| F629: C9 8B    |        | CMP #S8B    | ',' START OF COMMENT?     |
| F62B: F0 04    |        | BEQ FORM9   | YES                       |
| F62D: C9 8D    |        | CMP #S8D    | CARRIAGE RETURN?          |
| F62F: D0 80    |        | BNE BRP4    | NO, BRP.                  |
| F631: 4C 5C F5 | FORM9  | JMP TRYNEXT |                           |
| F634: B9 00 02 | GETNSP | LDA IN,Y    |                           |
| F637: C8       |        | INY         |                           |
| F638: C9 A0    |        | CMP #SA0    | GET NEXT NON BLANK CHAR   |
| F63A: F0 F8    |        | BEQ GETNSP  |                           |
| F63C: 60       |        | RTS         |                           |
|                |        | ORG \$F666  |                           |
| F666: 4C 92 F5 | MINASM | JMP RESETZ  |                           |



```

*
* APPLE-II FLOATING
* POINT ROUTINES
*
* COPYRIGHT 1977 BY
* APPLE COMPUTER INC.
*
* ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
*
* S. WOZNIAK
*

```

TITLE "FLOATING POINT ROUTINES"

|                |         |       |         |       |                                     |
|----------------|---------|-------|---------|-------|-------------------------------------|
|                |         | SIGN  | BPZ     | SP3   |                                     |
|                |         | X2    | EPZ     | SP4   |                                     |
|                |         | M2    | EPZ     | SP5   |                                     |
|                |         | X1    | EPZ     | SP8   |                                     |
|                |         | M1    | EPZ     | SP9   |                                     |
|                |         | E     | EPZ     | SPC   |                                     |
|                |         | OVLOC | EQV     | SPF5  |                                     |
|                |         |       | ORG     | SP425 |                                     |
| F425: 18       |         | ADD   | CLC     |       | CLEAR CARRY.                        |
| F426: A2 02    |         |       | LDX     | #52   | INDEX FOR 3-BYTE ADD.               |
| F428: B5 F9    |         | ADU1  | LDA     | M1,X  |                                     |
| F42A: 75 F5    |         |       | ADC     | M2,X  | ADD A BYTE OF MANT2 TO MANT1.       |
| F42C: 95 F9    |         |       | STA     | M1,X  |                                     |
| F42E: CA       |         |       | DEY     |       | INDEX TO NEXT MORE SIGNIF. BYTE.    |
| F42F: 10 F7    |         |       | BPL     | ADU1  | LOOP UNTIL DONE.                    |
| F431: 60       |         |       | RTS     |       | RETURN                              |
| F432: 06 F3    | MD1     | ASL   | SIGN    |       | CLEAR LSB OF SIGN.                  |
| F434: 20 37 F4 |         | JSR   | ABSWAP  |       | ABS VAL OF M1, THEN SWAP WITH M2.   |
| F437: 24 F9    | ABSWAP  | BIT   | M1      |       | MANT1 NEGATIVE?                     |
| F439: 10 05    |         | BPL   | ABSWAP1 |       | NO, SWAP WITH MANT2 AND RETURN.     |
| F43B: 20 A4 F4 |         | JSR   | PCOMPL  |       | YES, COMPLEMENT IT.                 |
| F43E: E6 F3    |         | INC   | SIGN    |       | INCR SIGN, COMPLEMENTING LSB.       |
| F440: 38       | ADSWAP1 | SEC   |         |       | SET CARRY FOR RETURN TO MUL/DIV.    |
| F441: A2 04    | SWAP    | LDX   | #54     |       | INDEX FOR 4-BYTE SWAP.              |
| F443: 94 F8    | SWAP1   | STY   | E-1,X   |       |                                     |
| F445: B5 F7    |         | LDA   | X1-1,X  |       | SWAP A BYTE OF EXP/MANT1 WITH       |
| F447: 94 F3    |         | LDY   | X2-1,X  |       | EXP/MANT2 AND LEAVE A COPY OF       |
| F449: 94 F7    |         | STY   | X1-1,X  |       | MANT1 IN E (3 BYTES). E+3 USED      |
| F44B: 95 F3    |         | STA   | X2-1,X  |       |                                     |
| F44D: CA       |         | DEX   |         |       | ADVANCE INDEX TO NEXT BYTE.         |
| F44E: D0 F3    |         | BNE   | SWAP1   |       | LOOP UNTIL DONE.                    |
| F450: 60       |         | RTS   |         |       | RETURN                              |
| F451: A9 8E    | FLOAT   | LDA   | #58E    |       | INIT EXP1 TO 14,                    |
| F453: 85 F8    |         | STA   | X1      |       | THEN NORMALIZE TO FLOAT.            |
| F455: A5 F9    | NORM1   | LDA   | M1      |       | HIGH-ORDER MANT1 BYTE.              |
| F457: C9 C0    |         | CMP   | #SC0    |       | UPPER TWO BITS UNEQUAL?             |
| F459: 30 0C    |         | BMI   | RTS1    |       | YES, RETURN WITH MANT1 NORMALIZED   |
| F45B: C6 F8    |         | DEC   | X1      |       | DECREMENT EXP1.                     |
| F45D: 06 F8    |         | ASL   | M1+2    |       |                                     |
| F45F: 26 FA    |         | ROL   | M1+1    |       | SHIFT MANT1 (3 BYTES) LEFT.         |
| F461: 26 F9    |         | ROL   | M1      |       |                                     |
| F463: A5 F8    | NORM    | LDA   | X1      |       | EXP1 ZERO?                          |
| F465: D0 EE    |         | BNE   | NORM1   |       | NO, CONTINUE NORMALIZING.           |
| F467: 60       | RTS1    | RTS   |         |       | RETURN.                             |
| F468: 20 A4 F4 | FSUB    | JSR   | PCOMPL  |       | CMPL MANT1, CLEARS CARRY UNLESS 0   |
| F46B: 20 7B F4 | SWPALGN | JSR   | ALGNSWP |       | RIGHT SHIFT MANT1 OR SWAP WITH      |
| F46E: A5 F4    | FADD    | LDA   | X2      |       |                                     |
| F470: C5 F8    |         | CMP   | X1      |       | COMPARE EXP1 WITH EXP2.             |
| F472: D0 F7    |         | BNE   | SWPALGN |       | IF #, SWAP ADDENDS OF ALIGN MANTS.  |
| F474: 20 25 F4 |         | JSR   | ADD     |       | ADD ALIGNED MANTISSAS.              |
| F477: 50 EA    | ADDEND  | BVC   | NORM    |       | NO OVERFLOW, NORMALIZE RESULT.      |
| F479: 70 05    |         | BVS   | RTLOG   |       | OV: SHIFT M1 RIGHT, CARRY INTO SIGN |

|                |         |                  |                                    |
|----------------|---------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| F478: 90 C4    | ALGNSWP | BCC SWAP         | SWAP IF CARRY CLEAR,               |
|                | *       | FLSE SHIFT RIGHT | ARITH.                             |
| F47D: A5 F9    | RTAP    | LDA M1           | SIGN OF MANT1 INTO CARRY FOR       |
| F47F: 0A       |         | ASL A            | RIGHT ARITH SHIFT.                 |
| F480: E6 F8    | RTLOG   | INC X1           | INCR X1 TO ADJUST FOR RIGHT SHIFT  |
| F482: F0 75    |         | REC OVFL         | EXPL OUT OF RANGE.                 |
| F484: A2 FA    | RTLOG1  | LDX #5FA         | INDEX FOR 6-BYTE RIGHT SHIFT.      |
| F486: 76 FF    | ROR1    | ROR E+3,X        |                                    |
| F488: E8       |         | INX              | NEXT BYTE OF SHIFT.                |
| F489: D0 F8    |         | BNE ROR1         | LOOP UNTIL DONE.                   |
| F48B: 60       |         | RTS              | RETURN.                            |
| F48C: 20 32 F4 | FNUL    | JSR MD1          | ABS VAL OF MANT1, MANT2.           |
| F48F: 65 F8    |         | ADC X1           | ADD EXPL TO EXP2 FOR PRODUCT EXP   |
| F491: 20 E2 F4 |         | JSR MD2          | CHECK PROD. EXP AND PREP. FOR MUL  |
| F494: 18       |         | CLC              | CLEAR CARRY FOR FIRST BIT.         |
| F495: 20 84 F4 | MUL1    | JSR RTLOG1       | M1 AND E RIGHT (PROD AND MPLIER)   |
| F498: 90 03    |         | BCC MUL2         | IF CARRY CLEAR, SKIP PARTIAL PROD  |
| F49A: 20 25 F4 |         | JSR ADD          | ADD MULTIPLICAND TO PRODUCT.       |
| F49D: 88       | MUL2    | DEY              | NEXT MUL ITERATION.                |
| F49E: 10 F5    |         | SPL MUL1         | LOOP UNTIL DONE.                   |
| F4A0: 46 F3    | NDEND   | LSR SIGN         | TEST SIGN LSB.                     |
| F4A2: 90 2F    | NORMX   | RCC NORM         | IF EVEN,NORMALIZE PROD,ELSE COMP   |
| F4A4: 38       | FCOMPL  | SEC              | SET CARRY FOR SUBTRACT.            |
| F4A5: A2 03    |         | LDX #53          | INDEX FOR 3-BYTE SUBTRACT.         |
| F4A7: A9 00    | COMPL1  | LDA #50          | CLEAR A.                           |
| F4A9: F5 F8    |         | SBC X1,X         | SUBTRACT BYTE OF EXPL.             |
| F4AB: 95 F8    |         | STA X1,X         | RESTORE IT.                        |
| F4AD: CA       |         | DEX              | NEXT MORE SIGNIFICANT BYTE.        |
| F4AE: D0 F7    |         | BNE COMPL1       | LOOP UNTIL DONE.                   |
| F4B0: F0 C5    |         | BEQ ADDEND       | NORMALIZE (OR SHIFT RT IF OVFL).   |
| F4B2: 20 32 F4 | FDIV    | JSR MD1          | TAKE ABS VAL OF MANT1, MANT2.      |
| F4B5: E5 F8    |         | SBC X1           | SUBTRACT EXPL FROM EXP2.           |
| F4B7: 20 E2 F4 |         | JSR MD2          | SAVE AS QUOTIENT EXP.              |
| F4BA: 38       | DIV1    | SEC              | SET CARRY FOR SUBTRACT.            |
| F4BB: A2 02    |         | LDY #52          | INDEX FOR 3-BYTE SUBTRACTION.      |
| F4BD: B5 F5    | DIV2    | LDA M2,X         |                                    |
| F4BF: F5 FC    |         | SBC E,X          | SUBTRACT A BYTE OF E FROM MANT2.   |
| F4C1: 48       |         | PHA              | SAVE ON STACK.                     |
| F4C2: CA       |         | DEX              | NEXT MORE SIGNIFICANT BYTE.        |
| F4C3: 10 F8    |         | BPL DIV2         | LOOP UNTIL DONE.                   |
| F4C5: A2 FD    |         | LDX #5FD         | INDEX FOR 3-BYTE CONDITIONAL MOVE  |
| F4C7: 68       |         | PLA              | PULL BYTE OF DIFFERENCE OFF STACK  |
| F4C8: 90 02    | DIV3    | BCC DIV4         | IF M2<E THEN DON'T RESTORE M2.     |
| F4CA: 95 F8    |         | STA M2+3,X       |                                    |
| F4CC: E8       | DIV4    | INX              | NEXT LESS SIGNIFICANT BYTE.        |
| F4CD: D0 F8    |         | BNE DIV3         | LOOP UNTIL DONE.                   |
| F4CF: 26 FB    |         | ROL M1+2         |                                    |
| F4D1: 26 FA    |         | ROL M1+1         | ROLL QUOTIENT LEFT,CARRY INTO LSB  |
| F4D3: 26 F9    |         | ROL M1           |                                    |
| F4D5: 06 F7    |         | ASL M2+2         |                                    |
| F4D7: 26 F6    |         | ROL M2+1         | SHIFT DIVIDEND LEFT.               |
| F4D9: 26 F5    |         | ROL M2           |                                    |
| F4DB: B0 1C    |         | BCC OVFL         | OVFL IS DUE TO UNNORMED DIVISOR    |
| F4DD: 88       |         | DEY              | NEXT DIVIDE ITERATION.             |
| F4DE: D0 DA    |         | BNE DIV1         | LOOP UNTIL DONE 23 ITERATIONS.     |
| F4E0: F0 BE    |         | BEQ MOPND        | NORM. QUOTIENT AND CORRECT SIGN.   |
| F4E2: 86 FB    | MD2     | STX M1+2         |                                    |
| F4E4: 86 FA    |         | STX M1+1         | CLEAR MANT1 (3 BYTES) FOR MUL/DIV. |
| F4E6: 86 F9    |         | STX M1           |                                    |
| F4E8: B0 0D    |         | BCC OVCHK        | IF CALC. SET CARRY,CHECK FOR OVFL  |
| F4EA: 30 04    |         | BMI MD3          | IF NEG THEN NO UNDERFLOW.          |
| F4EC: 68       |         | PLA              | POP ONE RETURN LEVEL.              |
| F4ED: 68       |         | PLA              |                                    |
| F4EE: 90 B2    |         | BCC NORMX        | CLEAR X1 AND RETURN.               |
| F4F0: 49 80    | MD3     | EOR #580         | COMPLEMENT SIGN BIT OF EXPONENT.   |
| F4F2: 85 F8    |         | STA X1           | STORE IT.                          |
| F4F4: A0 17    |         | LDY #517         | COUNT 24 MUL/23 DIV ITERATIONS     |
| F4F6: 60       |         | RTS              | RETURN.                            |
| F4F7: 10 F7    | OVCHK   | BPL MD3          | IF POSITIVE EXP THEN NO OVFL.      |
| F4F9: 4C F5 03 | OVFL    | JMP OVLOC        |                                    |
|                |         | ORG \$F63D       |                                    |
| F63D: 20 7D F4 | FIX1    | JSR RTAP         |                                    |
| F640: A5 F8    | FIX     | LDA X1           |                                    |
| F642: 10 13    |         | SPL UNDFL        |                                    |
| F644: C9 8E    |         | CMP #58E         |                                    |
| F646: D0 F5    |         | BNE FIX1         |                                    |
| F648: 24 F9    |         | BIT M1           |                                    |
| F64A: 10 0A    |         | GPL FIXPTS       |                                    |
| F64C: A5 FB    |         | LDA M1+2         |                                    |
| F64E: F0 06    |         | BEQ FIXRTS       |                                    |
| F650: E6 FA    |         | INC M1+1         |                                    |
| F652: D0 02    |         | BNE FIXRTS       |                                    |
| F654: E6 F9    |         | INC M1           |                                    |
| F656: 60       | FIXRTS  | RTS              |                                    |
| F657: A9 00    | UNDFL   | LDA #50          |                                    |
| F659: 85 F9    |         | STA M1           |                                    |
| F65B: 85 FA    |         | STA M1+1         |                                    |
| F65D: 60       |         | RTS              |                                    |

```

* APPLE-II PSEUDO *
* MACHINE INTERPRETER *
* *
* COPYRIGHT 1977 *
* APPLE COMPUTER INC *
* *
* ALL RIGHTS RESERVED *
* *
* S. WOZNAK *
*

```

TITLE "SWEET16 INTERPRETER"

```

ROL EPZ $0
ROR EPZ $1
R14W EPZ $1D
R15L EPZ $1E
R15H EPZ $1F
$16PAG EQU $F7
SAVE EQU $FF4A
RESTORE EQU $FF3F
ORG $F689

F689: 20 4A FF SW16 JSR SAVE PRESERVE 6502 REG CONTENTS
F68C: 68 PLA INIT SWEET16 PC
F68D: 85 1E STA R15L FROM RETURN
F68F: 68 PLA FROM RETURN
F690: 85 1F STA P15H ADDRESS
F692: 20 98 F6 SW16B JSR SW16C INTERPRET AND EXECUTE
F695: 4C 92 F6 JMP SW16B ONE SWEET16 INSTR.
F698: E6 1E SW16C INC R15L INCP SWEET16 PC FOR FETCH
F69A: 00 02 BNE SW16D
F69C: E6 1F INC R15H
F69E: A9 F7 SW16D LDA $S16PAG
F6A0: 48 PHA PUSH ON STACK FOR RTS
F6A1: A0 00 LDY $S0
F6A3: E1 1E LDA (R15L),Y FETCH INSTR
F6A5: 29 0F AND $SF MASK REG SPECIFICATION
F6A7: 0A ASL A DOUBLE FOR 2-BYTE REGISTERS
F6A8: AA TAX TO X-REG FOR INDEXING
F6A9: 4A LSR A
F6AA: 51 1E EOR (R15L),Y NOW HAVE OPCODE
F6AC: F0 0B BEQ TORR IF ZERO THEN NON-REG OP
F6AE: 86 1D STX R14H INDICATE 'PRIOR RESULT REG'
F6B0: 4A LSR A
F6B1: 4A LSR A OPCODE*2 TO LSR'S
F6B2: 4A LSR A
F6B3: A8 RAY TO Y-REG FOR INDEXING
F6B4: B9 E1 F6 LDA OPTBL-2,Y LOW-ORDER ADR BYTE
F6B7: 48 PHA ONTO STACK
F6B8: 60 RTS GOTO REG-OP ROUTINE
F6B9: E6 1E TO3F INC R15L INCR PC
F6BB: D0 02 SNE TORR2
F6BD: E6 1F INC R15H
F6BF: BD E4 F6 TO3F2 LDA OPTBL,X LOW-ORDER ADR BYTE
F6C2: 48 PHA ONTO STACK FOR NON-REG OP
F6C3: A5 1D LDA R14H 'PRIOR RESULT REG' INDEX
F6C5: 4A LSR A PREPARE CARRY FOR BC, BNC.
F6C6: 60 RTS GOTO NON-REG OP ROUTINE
F6C7: 68 RTNZ FOP RETURN ADDRESS
F6C8: 68 PLA
F6C9: 20 3F FF JSR RESTORE RESTORE 6502 REG CONTENTS
F6CC: 6C 1E 00 JMP (R15L) RETURN TO 6502 CODE VIA PC
F6CF: E1 1E SETZ LDA (R15L),Y HIGH-ORDER BYTE OF CONSTANT

```

|                |       |     |          |                               |
|----------------|-------|-----|----------|-------------------------------|
| F6D1: 95 01    |       | STA | ROH,X    |                               |
| F6D3: 88       |       | DEY |          |                               |
| F6D4: B1 1E    |       | LDA | (R15L),Y | LOW-ORDER BYTE OF CONSTANT    |
| F6D6: 95 00    |       | STA | ROL,X    |                               |
| F6D8: 98       |       | TYA |          | Y-REG CONTAINS 1              |
| F6D9: 38       |       | SEC |          |                               |
| F6DA: 65 1E    |       | ADC | R15L     | ADD 2 TO PC                   |
| F6DC: 85 1E    |       | STA | R15L     |                               |
| F6DE: 90 02    |       | BCC | SET2     |                               |
| F6E0: E6 1F    |       | INC | R15H     |                               |
| F6E2: 60       | SET2  | RTS |          |                               |
| F6E3: 02       | OPTBL | DFB | SET-1    | (1X)                          |
| F6E4: F9       | BRTHL | DFB | RTN-1    | (0)                           |
| F6E5: 04       |       | DFB | LD-1     | (2X)                          |
| F6E6: 90       |       | DFB | SP-1     | (1)                           |
| F6E7: 00       |       | DFB | ST-1     | (3X)                          |
| F6E8: 9E       |       | DFB | BMC-1    | (2)                           |
| F6E9: 25       |       | DFB | LDAT-1   | (4X)                          |
| F6EA: AF       |       | DFB | RC-1     | (3)                           |
| F6EB: 16       |       | DFB | STAT-1   | (5X)                          |
| F6EC: B2       |       | DFB | SP-1     | (4)                           |
| F6ED: 47       |       | DFB | LDDAT-1  | (6X)                          |
| F6EE: B9       |       | DFB | RM-1     | (5)                           |
| F6EF: 51       |       | DFB | STDAT-1  | (7X)                          |
| F6F0: C0       |       | DFB | RZ-1     | (6)                           |
| F6F1: 2F       |       | DFB | POP-1    | (8X)                          |
| F6F2: C9       |       | DFB | BNZ-1    | (7)                           |
| F6F3: 58       |       | DFB | STPAT-1  | (9X)                          |
| F6F4: D2       |       | DFB | BMI-1    | (8)                           |
| F6F5: 85       |       | DFB | ADD-1    | (AX)                          |
| F6F6: DD       |       | DFB | BNM1-1   | (9)                           |
| F6F7: 6E       |       | DFB | SUB-1    | (8X)                          |
| F6F8: 05       |       | DFB | AK-1     | (A)                           |
| F6F9: 33       |       | DFB | PCPD-1   | (CX)                          |
| F6FA: E8       |       | DFB | PS-1     | (B)                           |
| F6FB: 70       |       | DFB | CPR-1    | (DX)                          |
| F6FC: 93       |       | DFB | BS-1     | (C)                           |
| F6FD: 1E       |       | DFB | INR-1    | (EX)                          |
| F6FE: E7       |       | DFB | NUL-1    | (D)                           |
| F6FF: 65       |       | DFB | DCR-1    | (FX)                          |
| F700: E7       |       | DFB | NUL-1    | (E)                           |
| F701: E7       |       | DFB | NUL-1    | (UNUSED)                      |
| F702: E7       |       | DFB | NUL-1    | (F)                           |
| F703: 10 CA    | SET   | SPL | SETZ     | ALWAYS TAKEN                  |
| F705: 85 00    | LD    | LDA | ROL,X    |                               |
|                | BK    | EQU | *-1      |                               |
| F707: 85 00    |       | STA | ROL      |                               |
| F709: B5 01    |       | LDA | ROH,X    | MOVE RX TO RO                 |
| F70B: 85 01    |       | STA | ROH      |                               |
| F70D: 60       |       | RTS |          |                               |
| F70E: A5 00    | ST    | LDA | ROL      |                               |
| F710: 95 00    |       | STA | ROL,X    | MOVE RO TO RX                 |
| F712: A5 01    |       | LDA | ROH      |                               |
| F714: 95 01    |       | STA | ROH,X    |                               |
| F716: 60       |       | RTS |          |                               |
| F717: A5 00    | STAT  | LDA | ROL      |                               |
| F719: 81 00    | STAT2 | STA | (ROL,X)  | STORE BYTE INDIRECT           |
| F71B: A0 00    |       | LDY | #S0      |                               |
| F71D: 84 1D    | STAT3 | STY | R14H     | INDICATE RO IS RESULT REG     |
| F71F: F6 00    | INR   | INC | ROL,X    |                               |
| F721: D0 02    |       | SNE | INR2     | INCR RX                       |
| F723: F6 01    |       | INC | ROH,X    |                               |
| F725: 60       | INR2  | RTS |          |                               |
| F726: A1 00    | LDAT  | LDA | (ROL,X)  | LOAD INDIRECT (RX)            |
| F728: 85 00    |       | STA | ROL      | TO RO                         |
| F72A: A0 00    |       | LDY | #S0      |                               |
| F72C: 84 01    |       | STY | ROH      | ZERO HIGH-ORDER RO BYTE       |
| F72E: F0 ED    |       | BEO | STAT3    | ALWAYS TAKEN                  |
| F730: A0 00    | POP   | LDY | #S0      | HIGH ORDER BYTE = 0           |
| F732: F0 06    |       | BEO | POP2     | ALWAYS TAKEN                  |
| F734: 20 66 F7 | POPD  | JSR | DCR      | DECR RX                       |
| F737: A1 00    |       | LDA | (ROL,X)  | POP HIGH-ORDER BYTE @RX       |
| F739: A8       |       | TAY |          | SAVE IN Y-REG                 |
| F73A: 20 66 F7 | POP2  | JSR | DCP      | DECR RX                       |
| F73D: A1 00    |       | LDA | (ROL,X)  | LOW-ORDER BYTE                |
| F73F: 85 00    |       | STA | ROL      | TO RO                         |
| F741: 84 01    |       | STY | ROH      |                               |
| F743: A0 00    | POP3  | LDY | #S0      | INDICATE RO AS LAST RSLT REG  |
| F745: 84 1D    |       | STY | R14H     |                               |
| F747: 60       |       | RTS |          |                               |
| F748: 20 26 F7 | LDAT  | JSR | LDAT     | LOW-ORDER BYTE TO RO, INCR RX |
| F74B: A1 00    |       | LDA | (ROL,X)  | HIGH-ORDER BYTE TO RO         |
| F74D: 85 01    |       | STA | ROH      |                               |
| F74F: 4C 1F F7 |       | JMP | INR      | INCR RX                       |
| F752: 20 17 F7 | STDAT | JSR | STAT     | STORE INDIRECT LOW-ORDER      |

|                      |      |              |                                |
|----------------------|------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| F755: A5 01          |      | LDA R0H      | BYTE AND INCR RX. THEN         |
| F757: 81 00          |      | STA (R0L,X)  | STORE HIGH-ORDER BYTE.         |
| F759: 4C 1F F7       |      | JMP INR      | INCR RX AND RETURN             |
| F75C: 20 66 F7 STPAT |      | JSR DCF      | DECR RX                        |
| F75F: A5 00          |      | LDA R0L      |                                |
| F761: 81 00          |      | STA (R0L,X)  | STORE R0 LOW BYTE &RX          |
| F763: 4C 43 F7       |      | JMP POPJ     | INDICATE R0 AS LAST RESULT REG |
| F766: B5 00          | DCF  | LDA R0L,X    |                                |
| F768: D0 02          |      | SNE DCR2     | DECR PX                        |
| F76A: D6 01          |      | DEC R0H,X    |                                |
| F76C: D6 00          | DCR2 | DEC R0L,X    |                                |
| F76E: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F76F: A0 00          | SU3  | LDY #S0      | RESULT TO R0                   |
| F771: 38             | CPR  | SEC          | NOTE Y-REG = 13*2 FOR CPR      |
| F772: A5 00          |      | LDA R0L      |                                |
| F774: F5 00          |      | SBC R0L,X    |                                |
| F776: 99 00 00       |      | STA R0L,Y    | R0-RX TO RY                    |
| F779: A5 01          |      | LDA R0H      |                                |
| F77B: F5 01          |      | SBC R0H,X    |                                |
| F77D: 99 01 00 SUB2  |      | STA R0H,Y    |                                |
| F780: 98             |      | TYA          | LAST RESULT REG*2              |
| F781: 69 00          |      | ADC #S0      | CARRY TO LSB                   |
| F783: 85 1D          |      | STA R14H     |                                |
| F785: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F786: A5 00          | ADD  | LDA R0L      |                                |
| F788: 75 00          |      | ADC R0L,X    |                                |
| F78A: 85 00          |      | STA R0L      | R0+RX TO R0                    |
| F78C: A5 01          |      | LDA R0H      |                                |
| F78E: 75 01          |      | ADC R0H,X    |                                |
| F790: A0 00          |      | LDY #S0      | R0 FOR RESULT                  |
| F792: F0 E9          |      | BEQ SUB2     | FINISH ADD                     |
| F794: A5 1E          | BS   | LDA R15L     | NOTE X-REG IS 12*2!            |
| F796: 20 19 F7       |      | JSR STAT2    | PUSH LOW PC BYTE VIA R12       |
| F799: A5 1F          |      | LDA R15H     |                                |
| F79B: 20 19 F7       |      | JSR STAT2    | PUSH HIGH-ORDER PC BYTE        |
| F79E: 18             | BR   | CLC          |                                |
| F79F: B0 0E          | BNC  | SCS BNC2     | NO CARRY TEST                  |
| F7A1: B1 1E          | BR1  | LDA (R15L),Y | DISPLACEMENT BYTE              |
| F7A3: 10 01          |      | BPL BR2      |                                |
| F7A5: 88             |      | DEY          |                                |
| F7A6: 65 1E          | BR2  | ADC R15L     | ADD TO PC                      |
| F7A8: 85 1E          |      | STA R15L     |                                |
| F7AA: 98             |      | TYA          |                                |
| F7AB: 65 1F          |      | ADC R15H     |                                |
| F7AD: 85 1F          |      | STA R15H     |                                |
| F7AF: 60             | BNC2 | RTS          |                                |
| F7B0: B0 EC          | BC   | BCS BR       |                                |
| F7B2: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F7B3: 0A             | BP   | ASL A        | DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX        |
| F7B4: AA             |      | TAX          | TO X-REG FOR INDEXING          |
| F7B5: B5 01          |      | LDA R0H,X    | TEST FOR PLUS                  |
| F7B7: 10 E8          |      | BPL BR1      | BRANCH IF SO                   |
| F7B9: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F7BA: 0A             | BR1  | ASL A        | DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX        |
| F7BB: AA             |      | TAX          |                                |
| F7BC: B5 01          |      | LDA R0H,X    | TEST FOR MINUS                 |
| F7BE: 30 E1          |      | BMI BR1      |                                |
| F7C0: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F7C1: 0A             | BZ   | ASL A        | DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX        |
| F7C2: AA             |      | TAX          |                                |
| F7C3: B5 00          |      | LDA R0L,X    | TEST FOR ZERO                  |
| F7C5: 15 01          |      | ORA R0H,X    | (BOTH BYTES)                   |
| F7C7: F0 D8          |      | BEQ BR1      | BRANCH IF SO                   |
| F7C9: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F7CA: 0A             | BZ   | ASL A        | DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX        |
| F7CB: AA             |      | TAX          |                                |
| F7CC: B5 00          |      | LDA R0L,X    | TEST FOR NONZERO               |
| F7CE: 15 01          |      | ORA R0H,X    | (BOTH BYTES)                   |
| F7D0: D0 CF          |      | SNE BR1      | BRANCH IF SO                   |
| F7D2: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F7D3: 0A             | BR1  | ASL A        | DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX        |
| F7D4: AA             |      | TAX          |                                |
| F7D5: B5 00          |      | LDA R0L,X    | CHECK BOTH BYTES               |
| F7D7: 35 01          |      | AND R0H,X    | FOR \$FF (MINUS 1)             |
| F7D9: 49 FF          |      | EOR #SFF     |                                |
| F7DB: F0 C4          |      | BEQ BR1      | BRANCH IF SO                   |
| F7DD: 60             |      | RTS          |                                |
| F7DE: 0A             | BNM1 | ASL A        | DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX        |
| F7DF: AA             |      | TAX          |                                |
| F7E0: B5 00          |      | LDA R0L,X    | CHECK BOTH BYTES FOR NO \$FF   |
| F7E2: 35 01          |      | AND R0H,X    |                                |
| F7E4: 49 FF          |      | EOR #SFF     |                                |
| F7E6: D0 B9          |      | SNE BR1      | BRANCH IF NOT MINUS 1          |
| F7E8: 60             | NUL  | RTS          |                                |
| F7E9: A2 18          | RS   | LDX #S18     | 12*2 FOR R12 AS STK POINTER    |

|                    |             |                           |
|--------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| F7EB: 20 66 F7     | JSR DCR     | DECR STACK POINTER        |
| F7EE: A1 00        | LDA (R0L,X) | POP HIGH RETURN ADR TO PC |
| F7FC: 85 1F        | STA R15H    |                           |
| F7F2: 20 66 F7     | JSR DCR     | SAME FOR LOW-ORDER BYTE   |
| F7F5: A1 00        | LDA (R0L,X) |                           |
| F7F7: 85 1E        | STA R15L    |                           |
| F7F9: 60           | RTS         |                           |
| F7FA: 4C C7 F6 RTN | JMP RTNZ    |                           |

## 6502 MICROPROCESSOR INSTRUCTIONS

|            |                                            |            |                                              |
|------------|--------------------------------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>ADC</b> | Add Memory to Accumulator with Carry       | <b>LDA</b> | Load Accumulator with Memory                 |
| <b>AND</b> | "AND" Memory with Accumulator              | <b>LDX</b> | Load Index X with Memory                     |
| <b>ASL</b> | Shift Left One Bit (Memory or Accumulator) | <b>LDY</b> | Load Index Y with Memory                     |
|            |                                            | <b>LSR</b> | Shift Right one Bit (Memory or Accumulator)  |
| <b>BCC</b> | Branch on Carry Clear                      | <b>NOP</b> | No Operation                                 |
| <b>BCS</b> | Branch on Carry Set                        | <b>ORA</b> | "OR" Memory with Accumulator                 |
| <b>BEQ</b> | Branch on Result Zero                      | <b>PHA</b> | Push Accumulator on Stack                    |
| <b>BIT</b> | Test Bits in Memory with Accumulator       | <b>PHP</b> | Push Processor Status on Stack               |
| <b>BMI</b> | Branch on Result Minus                     | <b>PLA</b> | Pull Accumulator from Stack                  |
| <b>BNE</b> | Branch on Result not Zero                  | <b>PLP</b> | Pull Processor Status from Stack             |
| <b>BPL</b> | Branch on Result Plus                      | <b>ROL</b> | Rotate One Bit Left (Memory or Accumulator)  |
| <b>BRK</b> | Force Break                                | <b>ROR</b> | Rotate One Bit Right (Memory or Accumulator) |
| <b>BVC</b> | Branch on Overflow Clear                   | <b>RTI</b> | Return from interrupt                        |
| <b>BVS</b> | Branch on Overflow Set                     | <b>RTS</b> | Return from Subroutine                       |
| <b>CLC</b> | Clear Carry Flag                           | <b>SBC</b> | Subtract Memory from Accumulator with Borrow |
| <b>CLD</b> | Clear Decimal Mode                         | <b>SEC</b> | Set Carry Flag                               |
| <b>CLI</b> | Clear Interrupt Disable Bit                | <b>SED</b> | Set Decimal Mode                             |
| <b>CLV</b> | Clear Overflow Flag                        | <b>SEI</b> | Set Interrupt Disable Status                 |
| <b>CMP</b> | Compare Memory and Accumulator             | <b>STA</b> | Store Accumulator in Memory                  |
| <b>CPX</b> | Compare Memory and Index X                 | <b>STX</b> | Store Index X in Memory                      |
| <b>CPY</b> | Compare Memory and Index Y                 | <b>STY</b> | Store Index Y in Memory                      |
| <b>DEC</b> | Decrement Memory by One                    | <b>TAX</b> | Transfer Accumulator to Index X              |
| <b>DEX</b> | Decrement Index X by One                   | <b>TAY</b> | Transfer Accumulator to Index Y              |
| <b>DEY</b> | Decrement Index Y by One                   | <b>TSX</b> | Transfer Stack Pointer to Index X            |
| <b>EOR</b> | "Exclusive-Or" Memory with Accumulator     | <b>TXA</b> | Transfer Index X to Accumulator              |
|            |                                            | <b>TXS</b> | Transfer Index X to Stack Pointer            |
| <b>INC</b> | Increment Memory by One                    | <b>TYA</b> | Transfer Index Y to Accumulator              |
| <b>INX</b> | Increment Index X by One                   |            |                                              |
| <b>INY</b> | Increment Index Y by One                   |            |                                              |
| <b>JMP</b> | Jump to New Location                       |            |                                              |
| <b>JSR</b> | Jump to New Location Saving Return Address |            |                                              |

## THE FOLLOWING NOTATION APPLIES TO THIS SUMMARY:

|      |                           |
|------|---------------------------|
| A    | Accumulator               |
| X, Y | Index Registers           |
| M    | Memory                    |
| C    | Borrow                    |
| P    | Processor Status Register |
| S    | Stack Pointer             |
| ✓    | Change                    |
| —    | No Change                 |
| +    | Add                       |
| Λ    | Logical AND               |
| -    | Subtract                  |
| ⊕    | Logical Exclusive Or      |
| ↑    | Transfer From Stack       |
| ↓    | Transfer To Stack         |
| →    | Transfer To               |
| ←    | Transfer To               |
| V    | Logical OR                |
| PC   | Program Counter           |
| PCH  | Program Counter High      |
| PCL  | Program Counter Low       |
| OPER | Operand                   |
| #    | Immediate Addressing Mode |

FIGURE 1. ASL-SHIFT LEFT ONE BIT OPERATION

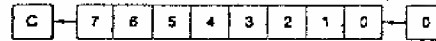


FIGURE 2. ROTATE ONE BIT LEFT (MEMORY OR ACCUMULATOR)

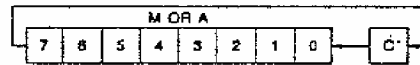
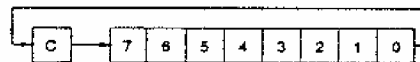


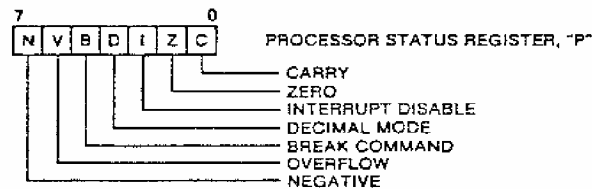
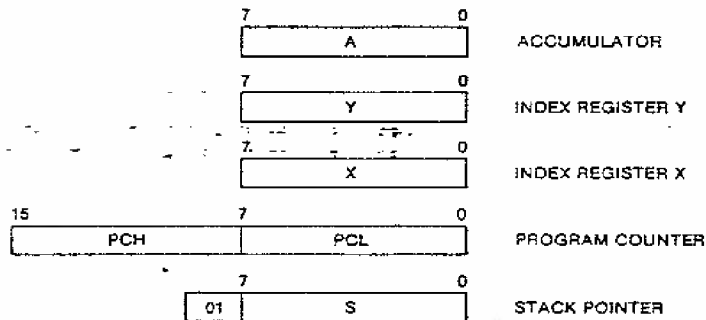
FIGURE 3



NOTE 1: BIT — TEST BITS

Bit 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A Λ M is zero then Z=1, otherwise Z=0.

## PROGRAMMING MODEL





## INSTRUCTION CODES

| Name<br>Description                                         | Operation                                      | Addressing<br>Mode                                                                                                          | Assembly<br>Language<br>Form                                                                                              | HEX<br>Op<br>Code                            | No.<br>Bytes                         | "V" Status Req.<br>M Z C D V      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>ADC</b><br>Add memory to<br>accumulator; with carry      | A+M+C → A,C                                    | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute X<br>Absolute Y<br>Absolute Y<br>(Indirect X)<br>(Indirect Y) | ADC #Oper<br>ADC Oper<br>ADC Oper,X<br>ADC Oper<br>ADC Oper,X<br>ADC Oper,Y<br>ADC Oper,Y<br>ADC (Oper,X)<br>ADC (Oper),Y | 69<br>65<br>75<br>63<br>70<br>79<br>61<br>71 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2 | ✓✓✓---✓                           |
| <b>AND</b><br>"AND" memory with<br>accumulator              | A&M → A                                        | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute X<br>Absolute Y<br>Absolute Y<br>(Indirect X)<br>(Indirect Y) | AND #Oper<br>AND Oper<br>AND Oper,X<br>AND Oper<br>AND Oper,X<br>AND Oper,Y<br>AND Oper,Y<br>AND (Oper,X)<br>AND (Oper),Y | 79<br>65<br>35<br>20<br>30<br>33<br>28<br>31 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2 | ✓✓-----                           |
| <b>ASL</b><br>Shift left one bit<br>(Memory or Accumulator) | (See Figure 1)                                 | Accumulator<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute X                                                           | ASL A<br>ASL Oper<br>ASL Oper,X<br>ASL Oper<br>ASL Oper,X                                                                 | 0A<br>06<br>15<br>0E<br>1E                   | 1<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3                | ✓✓✓------                         |
| <b>BCC</b><br>Branch on carry clear                         | Branch on C=0                                  | Relative                                                                                                                    | BCC Oper                                                                                                                  | 90                                           | 2                                    | -----                             |
| <b>BCS</b><br>Branch on carry set                           | Branch on C=1                                  | Relative                                                                                                                    | BCS Oper                                                                                                                  | D0                                           | 2                                    | -----                             |
| <b>BEQ</b><br>Branch on result zero                         | Branch on Z=1                                  | Relative                                                                                                                    | BEQ Oper                                                                                                                  | F0                                           | 2                                    | -----                             |
| <b>BIT</b><br>Test bits in memory<br>with accumulator       | A&M, M <sub>0</sub> → M,<br>M <sub>0</sub> → V | Zero Page<br>Absolute                                                                                                       | BIT* Oper<br>BIT* Oper                                                                                                    | 24<br>2C                                     | 2<br>3                               | M <sub>0</sub> ✓---M <sub>6</sub> |
| <b>BMI</b><br>Branch on result minus                        | Branch on M=1                                  | Relative                                                                                                                    | BMI Oper                                                                                                                  | 30                                           | 2                                    | -----                             |
| <b>BNE</b><br>Branch on result not zero                     | Branch on Z=0                                  | Relative                                                                                                                    | BNE Oper                                                                                                                  | D0                                           | 2                                    | -----                             |
| <b>BPL</b><br>Branch on result plus                         | Branch on M=0                                  | Relative                                                                                                                    | BPL Oper                                                                                                                  | Y0                                           | 2                                    | -----                             |
| <b>BRK</b><br>Force Break                                   | Force<br>Interrupt<br>PC+2 + P ↑               | Implied                                                                                                                     | BRK*                                                                                                                      | 00                                           | 1                                    | ---↑---                           |
| <b>BVC</b><br>Branch on overflow clear                      | Branch on V=0                                  | Relative                                                                                                                    | BVC Oper                                                                                                                  | 50                                           | 2                                    | ---↑---                           |

Study 2: A mixed community of students has selected the following 1

| Mnemonic Description                         | Operation     | Addressing Mode                                                                                                                                     | Assembly Language Form                                                                                                                            | HEX OP Code                                        | No. Bytes                                      | "P" Status Req. M Z C I O V |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>BVS</b><br>Branch on overflow set         | Branch on V=1 | Relative                                                                                                                                            | BVS Oper                                                                                                                                          | 70                                                 | 2                                              | -----                       |
| <b>CLC</b><br>Clear carry flag               | 0 → C         | Implied                                                                                                                                             | CLC                                                                                                                                               | B8                                                 | 1                                              | ---0---                     |
| <b>CLD</b><br>Clear decimal mode             | 0 → D         | Implied                                                                                                                                             | CLD                                                                                                                                               | D8                                                 | 1                                              | -0-----                     |
| <b>CLI</b>                                   | 0 → I         | Implied                                                                                                                                             | CLI                                                                                                                                               | 58                                                 | 1                                              | -----0---                   |
| <b>CLV</b><br>Clear overflow flag            | 0 → V         | Implied                                                                                                                                             | CLV                                                                                                                                               | B8                                                 | 1                                              | 0-----                      |
| <b>CMP</b><br>Compare memory and accumulator | A — M         | Immediate<br>Zero Page, X<br>Zero Page, Y<br>Absolute<br>Absolute, X<br>Absolute, Y<br>Absolute, X<br>Absolute, Y<br>(Indirect, X)<br>(Indirect, Y) | CMP #Oper<br>CMP Oper<br>CMP Oper, X<br>CMP Oper, Y<br>CMP Oper, X<br>CMP Oper, Y<br>CMP Oper, X<br>CMP Oper, Y<br>CMP (Oper, X)<br>CMP (Oper, Y) | C0<br>C3<br>D5<br>C0<br>D3<br>D0<br>D3<br>C1<br>D1 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2<br>2<br>2 | ✓✓✓-----                    |
| <b>CPX</b><br>Compare memory and index X     | X — M         | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Absolute                                                                                                                  | CPX #Oper<br>CPX Oper<br>CPX Oper                                                                                                                 | E0<br>E4<br>EC                                     | 2<br>2<br>3                                    | ✓✓✓-----                    |
| <b>CPY</b><br>Compare memory and index Y     | Y — M         | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Absolute                                                                                                                  | CPY #Oper<br>CPY Oper<br>CPY Oper                                                                                                                 | C0<br>C4<br>CC                                     | 2<br>2<br>3                                    | ✓✓✓-----                    |
| <b>DEC</b><br>Decrement memory by one        | M — 1 → M     | Zero Page<br>Zero Page, X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute, X                                                                                                | DEC Oper<br>DEC Oper, X<br>DEC Oper<br>DEC Oper, X                                                                                                | 08<br>D6<br>CE<br>DE                               | 2<br>3<br>2<br>3                               | ✓✓-----                     |
| <b>DEX</b><br>Decrement index X by one       | X — 1 → X     | Implied                                                                                                                                             | DEX                                                                                                                                               | CA                                                 | 1                                              | ✓✓-----                     |
| <b>DEY</b><br>Decrement index Y by one       | Y — 1 → Y     | Implied                                                                                                                                             | DEY                                                                                                                                               | B8                                                 | 1                                              | ✓✓-----                     |

# INSTRUCTION CODES

| Name<br>Description                                           | Operation      | Addressing<br>Mode                                                                                                            | Assembly<br>Language<br>Form                                                                                                | HEX<br>OP<br>Code                                  | No.<br>Bytes                              | "P" Status Reg.<br>N Z C I O V |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>LSR</b><br>Shift right one bit<br>(memory or accumulator)  | (See Figure 1) | Accumulator<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X                                                             | LSR A<br>LSR Oper<br>LSR Oper,X<br>LSR Oper<br>LSR Oper,X                                                                   | 4A<br>4B<br>55<br>56<br>4E<br>5E                   | 1<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3                | 0✓✓-----                       |
| <b>NOP</b><br>No operation                                    | No operation   | Implied                                                                                                                       | NOP                                                                                                                         | EA                                                 | 1                                         | -----                          |
| <b>ORA</b><br>"OR" memory with<br>accumulator                 | A V M → A      | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>(Indirect,X)<br>(Indirect,X),Y | ORA #Oper<br>ORA Oper<br>ORA Oper,X<br>ORA Oper<br>ORA Oper,X<br>ORA Oper,X<br>ORA Oper,X<br>ORA (Oper,X)<br>ORA (Oper,X),Y | C9<br>C5<br>D5<br>15<br>00<br>10<br>30<br>D1<br>11 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2<br>2 | ✓✓-----                        |
| <b>PHA</b><br>Push accumulator<br>on stack                    | A ↓            | Implied                                                                                                                       | PHA                                                                                                                         | 46                                                 | 1                                         | -----                          |
| <b>PHP</b><br>Push processor status<br>on stack               | P ↓            | Implied                                                                                                                       | PHP                                                                                                                         | 06                                                 | 1                                         | -----                          |
| <b>PLA</b><br>Pull accumulator<br>from stack                  | A ↑            | Implied                                                                                                                       | PLA                                                                                                                         | 68                                                 | 1                                         | ✓✓-----                        |
| <b>PLP</b><br>Pull processor status<br>from stack             | P ↑            | Implied                                                                                                                       | PLP                                                                                                                         | 28                                                 | 1                                         | From Stack                     |
| <b>ROL</b><br>Rotate one bit left<br>(memory or accumulator)  | (See Figure 2) | Accumulator<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X                                                             | ROL A<br>ROL Oper<br>ROL Oper,X<br>ROL Oper<br>ROL Oper,X                                                                   | 2A<br>2B<br>36<br>37<br>2E<br>3E                   | 1<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3                | ✓✓✓-----                       |
| <b>ROR</b><br>Rotate one bit right<br>(memory or accumulator) | (See Figure 3) | Accumulator<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X                                                             | ROR A<br>ROR Oper<br>ROR Oper,X<br>ROR Oper<br>ROR Oper,X                                                                   | 6A<br>6B<br>76<br>77<br>6E<br>7E                   | 1<br>2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3                | ✓✓✓-----                       |

| Name<br>Description                                         | Operation                            | Addressing<br>Mode                                                                                                            | Assembly<br>Language<br>Form                                                                                                | HEX<br>OP<br>Code                            | No.<br>Bytes                         | "P" Status Reg.<br>N Z C I O V |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>EDR</b><br>"Exclusive-OR" memory<br>with accumulator     | A V M → A                            | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>(Indirect,X)<br>(Indirect,X),Y | EDR #Oper<br>EDR Oper<br>EDR Oper,X<br>EDR Oper<br>EDR Oper,X<br>EDR Oper,X<br>EDR Oper,X<br>EDR (Oper,X)<br>EDR (Oper,X),Y | 49<br>45<br>55<br>40<br>50<br>59<br>41<br>51 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2<br>2 | ✓✓✓-----                       |
| <b>INC</b><br>Increment memory<br>by one                    | M + 1 → M                            | Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>(Indirect,X)<br>(Indirect,X),Y              | INC Oper<br>INC Oper,X<br>INC Oper<br>INC Oper,X<br>INC Oper,X<br>INC Oper,X<br>INC (Oper,X)<br>INC (Oper,X),Y              | E6<br>F6<br>EE<br>FE<br>E6<br>C9<br>4C<br>6C | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>3 | ✓✓✓-----                       |
| <b>INX</b><br>Increment Index X by one                      | X + 1 → X                            | Implied                                                                                                                       | INX                                                                                                                         | E6                                           | 1                                    | ✓✓✓-----                       |
| <b>INY</b><br>Increment Index Y by one                      | Y + 1 → Y                            | Implied                                                                                                                       | INY                                                                                                                         | C9                                           | 1                                    | ✓✓✓-----                       |
| <b>JMP</b><br>Jump to new location                          | (PC+1) → PC<br>(PC+2) → PC           | Absolute<br>Indirect                                                                                                          | JMP Oper<br>JMP (Oper)                                                                                                      | 4C<br>6C                                     | 3<br>3                               | -----                          |
| <b>JSR</b><br>Jump to new location<br>saving return address | PC+2 ↓<br>(PC+1) → PC<br>(PC+2) → PC | Absolute                                                                                                                      | JSR Oper                                                                                                                    | 20                                           | 3                                    | -----                          |
| <b>LDA</b><br>Load accumulator<br>with memory               | M → A                                | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>(Indirect,X)<br>(Indirect,X),Y | LDA #Oper<br>LDA Oper<br>LDA Oper,X<br>LDA Oper<br>LDA Oper,X<br>LDA Oper,X<br>LDA Oper,X<br>LDA (Oper,X)<br>LDA (Oper,X),Y | A9<br>A5<br>B5<br>A0<br>B0<br>B9<br>A1<br>B1 | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2<br>2 | ✓✓✓-----                       |
| <b>LDX</b><br>Load Index X<br>with memory                   | M → X                                | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>(Indirect,X)<br>(Indirect,X),Y | LDX #Oper<br>LDX Oper<br>LDX Oper,X<br>LDX Oper<br>LDX Oper,X<br>LDX Oper,X<br>LDX Oper,X<br>LDX (Oper,X)<br>LDX (Oper,X),Y | A2<br>A6<br>B6<br>AE<br>BE                   | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3                | ✓✓✓-----                       |
| <b>LDY</b><br>Load Index Y<br>with memory                   | M → Y                                | Immediate<br>Zero Page<br>Zero Page,X<br>Absolute<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>Absolute,X<br>(Indirect,X)<br>(Indirect,X),Y | LDY #Oper<br>LDY Oper<br>LDY Oper,X<br>LDY Oper<br>LDY Oper,X<br>LDY Oper,X<br>LDY Oper,X<br>LDY (Oper,X)<br>LDY (Oper,X),Y | A0<br>A4<br>B4<br>AC<br>BC                   | 2<br>2<br>2<br>3<br>3                | ✓✓✓-----                       |

# INSTRUCTION CODES

| Name<br>Description                                | Operation | Addressing<br>Mode | Assembly<br>Language<br>Form | HEX<br>OP<br>Code | No.<br>Bytes | "P" Status Reg.<br>M Z C I O V |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>TXA</b><br>Transfer index X<br>to accumulator   | X → A     | Implied            | TXA                          | 8A                | 1            | ✓✓-----                        |
| <b>TXS</b><br>Transfer index X to<br>stack pointer | X → S     | Implied            | TXS                          | 9A                | 1            | -----                          |
| <b>TYA</b><br>Transfer index Y<br>to accumulator   | Y → A     | Implied            | TYA                          | 99                | 1            | ✓✓-----                        |

| Name<br>Description                                           | Operation      | Addressing<br>Mode                                                                                               | Assembly<br>Language<br>Form                                                                                    | HEX<br>OP<br>Code                      | No.<br>Bytes                    | "P" Status Reg.<br>M Z C I O V |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>RTI</b><br>Return from interrupt                           | P ← PC         | Implied                                                                                                          | RTI                                                                                                             | 40                                     | 1                               | From Stack                     |
| <b>RTS</b><br>Return from subroutine                          | PC ← PC-1 → PC | Implied                                                                                                          | RTS                                                                                                             | 60                                     | 1                               | -----                          |
| <b>SBC</b><br>Subtract memory from<br>accumulator with borrow | A ← M ← A      | Immediate<br>Zero Page X<br>Absolute X<br>Absolute Y<br>Absolute X<br>Absolute Y<br>(Indirect X)<br>(Indirect Y) | SBC #Oper<br>SBC Oper X<br>SBC Oper X<br>SBC Oper X<br>SBC Oper Y<br>SBC Oper X<br>SBC (Oper X)<br>SBC (Oper Y) | E8<br>E5<br>ED<br>FD<br>F9<br>E1<br>F1 | 2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2<br>2 | ✓✓✓✓✓✓                         |
| <b>SEC</b><br>Set carry flag                                  | 1 → C          | Implied                                                                                                          | SEC                                                                                                             | 38                                     | 1                               | -----                          |
| <b>SED</b><br>Set decimal mode                                | 1 → D          | Implied                                                                                                          | SED                                                                                                             | F8                                     | 1                               | -----                          |
| <b>SEI</b><br>Set interrupt disable<br>status                 | 1 → I          | Implied                                                                                                          | SEI                                                                                                             | 78                                     | 1                               | -----                          |
| <b>STA</b><br>Store accumulator<br>in memory                  | A → M          | Zero Page X<br>Zero Page X<br>Absolute X<br>Absolute X<br>Absolute Y<br>(Indirect X)<br>(Indirect Y)             | STA Oper<br>STA Oper X<br>STA Oper<br>STA Oper X<br>STA Oper Y<br>STA (Oper X)<br>STA (Oper Y)                  | 85<br>85<br>8D<br>8D<br>9D<br>81<br>91 | 2<br>2<br>3<br>3<br>3<br>2<br>2 | -----                          |
| <b>STX</b><br>Store index X in memory                         | X → M          | Zero Page<br>Zero Page Y<br>Absolute                                                                             | STX Oper<br>STX Oper Y<br>STX Oper                                                                              | 86<br>96<br>8E                         | 2<br>2<br>3                     | -----                          |
| <b>STY</b><br>Store index Y in memory                         | Y → M          | Zero Page<br>Zero Page X<br>Absolute                                                                             | STY Oper<br>STY Oper X<br>STY Oper                                                                              | 84<br>94<br>8C                         | 2<br>2<br>3                     | -----                          |
| <b>TAX</b><br>Transfer accumulator<br>to index X              | A → X          | Implied                                                                                                          | TAX                                                                                                             | AA                                     | 1                               | ✓✓-----                        |
| <b>TAY</b><br>Transfer accumulator<br>to index Y              | A → Y          | Implied                                                                                                          | TAY                                                                                                             | A8                                     | 1                               | ✓✓-----                        |
| <b>TSX</b><br>Transfer stack pointer<br>to index X            | S → X          | Implied                                                                                                          | TSX                                                                                                             | BA                                     | 1                               | ✓✓-----                        |

# HEX OPERATION CODES

|                         |                         |                            |                         |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 00 — BRK                | 2F — NOP                | 5E — LSR — Absolute, X     | 80 — STA — Absolute     | B4 — LDY — Zero Page, X | 0B — NOP                |
| 01 — ORA — Indirect, X  | 30 — BMI                | 5F — NOP                   | 81 — STX — Absolute     | B5 — LDA — Zero Page, X | 0C — NOP                |
| 02 — NOP                | 31 — AND — Indirect, Y  | 60 — RTS                   | 82 — NOP                | B6 — LDX — Zero Page, Y | 0D — CMP — Absolute, X  |
| 03 — NOP                | 32 — NOP                | 61 — ADC — Indirect, X     | 83 — NOP                | B7 — NOP                | 0E — DEC — Absolute, X  |
| 04 — NOP                | 33 — NOP                | 62 — NOP                   | 84 — STY — Indirect, Y  | B8 — CLV                | 0F — NOP                |
| 05 — ORA — Zero Page    | 34 — NOP                | 63 — NOP                   | 85 — NOP                | B9 — LDA — Absolute, Y  | E0 — CPX — Immediate    |
| 06 — ASL — Zero Page    | 35 — AND — Zero Page, X | 64 — NOP                   | 86 — STX — Zero Page, X | BA — TSX                | E1 — SBC — Indirect, X  |
| 07 — NOP                | 36 — ROL — Zero Page, X | 65 — ADC — Zero Page       | 87 — STY — Zero Page, Y | BB — NOP                | E2 — NOP                |
| 08 — PHP                | 37 — NOP                | 66 — ROR — Zero Page       | 88 — TXA                | BC — LDY — Absolute, X  | E3 — NOP                |
| 09 — ORA — Immediate    | 38 — SEC                | 67 — NOP                   | 89 — STA — Absolute, Y  | BD — LDA — Absolute, X  | E4 — CPX — Zero Page    |
| 0A — ASL — Accumulator  | 39 — AND — Absolute, Y  | 68 — PLA                   | 90 — TXS                | BE — LDX — Absolute, Y  | E5 — SBC — Zero Page    |
| 0B — NOP                | 3A — NOP                | 69 — ADC — Immediate       | 91 — NOP                | BF — NOP                | E6 — INC — Zero Page    |
| 0C — NOP                | 3B — NOP                | 6A — ROR — Accumulator     | 92 — STA — Absolute, Y  | C0 — CPY — Immediate    | E7 — NOP                |
| 0D — ORA — Absolute     | 3C — NOP                | 6B — NOP                   | 93 — TXS                | C1 — CMP — Indirect, X  | E8 — INX                |
| 0E — ASL — Absolute     | 3D — AND — Absolute, X  | 6C — JMP — Indirect        | 94 — STX — Absolute, X  | C2 — NOP                | E9 — SBC — Immediate    |
| 0F — NOP                | 3E — ROL — Absolute, X  | 6D — ADC — Absolute        | 95 — STY — Absolute, Y  | C3 — NOP                | EA — NOP                |
| 10 — BPL                | 3F — NOP                | 6E — ROR — Absolute        | 96 — STX — Zero Page, Y | C4 — CPY — Zero Page    | EB — NOP                |
| 11 — ORA — Indirect, Y  | 40 — RTI                | 6F — NOP                   | 97 — NOP                | C5 — CMP — Zero Page    | EC — CPX — Absolute     |
| 12 — NOP                | 41 — EOR — Indirect, X  | 70 — BVS                   | 98 — TXA                | C6 — DEC — Zero Page    | ED — SBC — Absolute     |
| 13 — NOP                | 42 — NOP                | 71 — ADC — Indirect, Y     | 99 — STA — Absolute, X  | C7 — NOP                | EE — INC — Absolute     |
| 14 — NOP                | 43 — NOP                | 72 — NOP                   | 9A — TXS                | C8 — INY                | EF — NOP                |
| 15 — ORA — Zero Page, X | 44 — NOP                | 73 — NOP                   | 9B — NOP                | C9 — CMP — Immediate    | F0 — BEQ                |
| 16 — ASL — Zero Page, X | 45 — EOR — Zero Page    | 74 — NOP                   | 9C — NOP                | CA — DEX                | F1 — SBC — Indirect, Y  |
| 17 — NOP                | 46 — LSR — Zero Page    | 75 — ADC — Zero Page, X    | 9D — STA — Absolute, X  | CB — NOP                | F2 — NOP                |
| 18 — CLC                | 47 — NOP                | 76 — ROR — Zero Page, X    | 9E — NOP                | CC — CPY — Absolute     | F3 — NOP                |
| 19 — ORA — Absolute, Y  | 48 — PHA                | 77 — NOP                   | 9F — NOP                | CD — CMP — Absolute     | F4 — NOP                |
| 1A — NOP                | 49 — EOR — Immediate    | 78 — SEI                   | A0 — LDY — Immediate    | CE — DEC — Absolute     | F5 — SBC — Zero Page, X |
| 1B — NOP                | 4A — LSR — Accumulator  | 79 — ADC — Absolute, Y     | A1 — LDA — Indirect, X  | CF — NOP                | F6 — INC — Zero Page, X |
| 1C — NOP                | 4B — NOP                | 7A — NOP                   | A2 — LDX — Immediate    | D0 — BNE                | F7 — NOP                |
| 1D — ORA — Absolute, X  | 4C — JMP — Absolute     | 7B — NOP                   | A3 — NOP                | D1 — CMP — Indirect, Y  | F8 — SED                |
| 1E — ASL — Absolute, X  | 4D — EOR — Absolute     | 7C — NOP                   | A4 — LDY — Zero Page    | D2 — NOP                | F9 — SBC — Absolute, Y  |
| 1F — NOP                | 4E — LSR — Absolute     | 7D — ADC — Absolute, X NOP | A5 — LDA — Zero Page    | D3 — NOP                | FA — NOP                |
| 20 — JSR                | 4F — NOP                | 7E — ROR — Absolute, X NOP | A6 — LDX — Zero Page    | D4 — NOP                | FB — NOP                |
| 21 — AND — Indirect, X  | 50 — BVC                | 7F — NOP                   | A7 — NOP                | D5 — CMP — Zero Page, X | FC — NOP                |
| 22 — NOP                | 51 — EOR Indirect, Y    | 80 — NOP                   | A8 — TAX                | D6 — DEC — Zero Page, X | FD — SBC — Absolute, X  |
| 23 — NOP                | 52 — NOP                | 81 — STA — Indirect, X     | AA — TAX                | D7 — NOP                | FE — INC — Absolute, X  |
| 24 — BIT — Zero Page    | 53 — NOP                | 82 — NOP                   | AB — NOP                | D8 — CLD                | FF — NOP                |
| 25 — AND — Zero Page    | 54 — NOP                | 83 — NOP                   | AC — LDY — Absolute     | D9 — CMP — Absolute, Y  |                         |
| 26 — ROL — Zero Page    | 55 — EOR — Zero Page, X | 84 — STY — Zero Page       | AD — Absolute           | DA — NOP                |                         |
| 27 — NOP                | 56 — LSR — Zero Page, X | 85 — STA — Zero Page       | AE — LDX — Absolute     |                         |                         |
| 28 — PLP                | 57 — NOP                | 86 — STX — Zero Page       | AF — NOP                |                         |                         |
| 29 — AND — Immediate    | 58 — CLJ                | 87 — NOP                   | B0 — BCS                |                         |                         |
| 2A — ROL — Accumulator  | 59 — EOR — Absolute, Y  | 88 — DEY                   | B1 — LDA — Indirect, Y  |                         |                         |
| 2B — NOP                | 5A — NOP                | 89 — TXA                   | B2 — NOP                |                         |                         |
| 2C — BIT — Absolute     | 5B — NOP                | 8A — TXA                   | B3 — NOP                |                         |                         |
| 2D — AND — Absolute     | 5C — NOP                | 8B — NOP                   |                         |                         |                         |
| 2E — ROL — Absolute     | 5D — EOR — Absolute, X  | 8C — STY — Absolute        |                         |                         |                         |

## APPLE II HARDWARE

### CONTENTS

1. Getting started with your Apple II Board
2. Apple II Switching Power Supply
3. Interfacing with the Home TV
4. Simple Serial Output
5. Interfacing the Apple -  
    Signals, Loading, Pin Connections
6. Memory -  
    Options , Expansion, Map, Address
7. System Timing
8. Schematics

## GETTING STARTED WITH YOUR APPLE II BOARD

### INTRODUCTION

#### ITEMS YOU WILL NEED:

Your APPLE II board comes completely assembled and thoroughly tested. You should have received the following:

- a. 1 ea. APPLE II P.C. Board complete with specified RAM memory.
- b. 1 ea. d.c. power connector with cable.
- c. 1 ea. 2" speaker with cable.
- d. 1 ea. Preliminary Manual
- e. 2 ea. Demonstration cassette tapes.
- f. 2 ea. 16 pin headers plugged into locations A7 and J14.

In addition you will need:

- g. A color TV set (or B & W) equipped with a direct video input connector for best performance or a commercially available RF modulator such as a "Pixi-verter"<sup>tm</sup>. Higher channel (7-13) modulators generally provide better system performance than lower channel modulators (2-6).
- h. The following power supplies (NOTE: current ratings do not include any capacity for peripheral boards.):
  1. +12 Volts with the following current capacity:
    - a. For 4K or 16K systems - 350mA.
    - b. For 8K, 20K or 32K - 550mA.
    - c. For 12K, 24K, 36K or 48K - 850mA.
  2. +5 Volts at 1.6 amps
  3. -5 Volts at 10mA.
4. OPTIONAL: If -12 Volts is required by your keyboard. (If using an APPLE II supplied keyboard, you will need -12V at 50mA.)

- i. An audio cassette recorder such as a Panasonic model RQ-309 DS which is used to load and save programs.
- j. An ASCII encoded keyboard equipped with a "reset" switch.
- k. Cable for the following:
  - 1. Keyboard to APPLE II P.C.B.
  - 2. Video out 75 ohm cable to TV or modulator
  - 3. Cassette to APPLE II P.C.B. (1 or 2)

Optionally you may desire:

- l. Game paddles or pots with cables to APPLE II Game I/O connector. (Several demo programs use PDL(0) and "Pong" also uses PDL(1).
- m. Case to hold all the above

#### Final Assembly Steps

1. Using detailed information on pin functions in hardware section of manual, connect power supplies to d.c. cable assembly. Use both ground wires to minimize resistance. With cable assembly disconnected from APPLE II mother board, turn on power supplies and verify voltages on connector pins. Improper supply connections such as reverse polarity can severely damage your APPLE II.
2. Connect keyboard to APPLE II by unplugging leader in location A7 and wiring keyboard cable to it, then plug back into APPLE II P.C.B.
3. Plug in speaker cable.
4. Optionally connect one or two game paddles using leader supplied in socket located at J14.
5. Connect video cable.
6. Connect cable from cassette monitor output to APPLE II cassette input.
7. Check to see that APPLE II board is not contacting any conducting surface.
8. With power supplies turned off, plug in power connector to mother board then recheck all cableing.

#### POWER UP

1. Turn power on. If power supplies overload, immediately turn off and recheck power cable wiring. Verify operating supply voltages are within  $\pm 3\%$  of nominal value.
2. You should now have random video display. If not check video level pot on mother board, full clockwise is maximum video output. Also check video cables for opens and shorts. Check modulator if you are using one.
3. Press reset button. Speaker should beep and a "\*" prompt character with a blinking cursor should appear in lower left on screen.
4. Press "esc" button, release and type a "@" (shift-P) to clear screen. You may now try "Monitor" commands if you wish. See details in "Monitor" software section.

#### RUNNING BASIC

1. Turn power on; press reset button; type "control B" and press return button. A ">" prompt character should appear on screen indicating that you are now in BASIC.
2. Load one of the supplied demonstration cassettes into recorder. Set recorder level to approximately 5 and start recorder. Type "LOAD" and return. First beep indicates that APPLE II has found beginning of program; second indicates end of program followed by ">" character on screen. If error occurs on loading, try a different demo tape or try changing cassette volume level.
3. Type RUN and carriage return to execute demonstration program. Listings of these are included in the last section of this manual.



## THE APPLE II SWITCHING POWER SUPPLY

Switching power supplies generally have both advantages and peculiarities not generally found in conventional power supplies. The Apple II user is urged to review this section.

Your Apple II is equipped with an AC line voltage filter and a three wire AC line cord. It is important to make sure that the third wire is returned to earth ground. Use a continuity checker or ohmmeter to ensure that the third wire is actually returned to earth. Continuity should be checked for between the power supply case and an available water pipe for example. The line filter, which is of a type approved by domestic (U.L. CSA) and international (VDE) agencies must be returned to earth to function properly and to avoid potential shock hazards.

The APPLE II power supply is of the "flyback" switching type. In this system, the AC line is rectified directly, "chopped up" by a high frequency oscillator and coupled through a small transformer to the diodes, filters, etc., and results in four low voltage DC supplies to run APPLE II. The transformer isolates the DC supplies from the line and is provided with several shields to prevent "hash" from being coupled into the logic or peripherals. In the "flyback" system, the energy transferred through from the AC line side to DC supply side is stored in the transformer's inductance on one-half of the operating cycle, then transferred to the output filter capacitors on the second half of the operating cycle. Similar systems are used in TV sets to provide horizontal deflection and the high voltages to run the CRT.

Regulation of the DC voltages is accomplished by controlling the frequency at which the converter operates; the greater the output power needed, the lower the frequency of the converter. If the converter is overloaded, the operating frequency will drop into the audible range with squeels and squawks warning the user that something is wrong.

All DC outputs are regulated at the same time and one of the four outputs (the +5 volt supply) is compared to a reference voltage with the difference error fed to a feedback loop to assist the oscillator in running at the needed frequency. Since all DC outputs are regulated together, their voltages will reflect to some extent unequal loadings.

For example; if the +5 supply is loaded very heavily, then all other supply voltages will increase in voltage slightly; conversely, very light loading on the +5 supply and heavy loading on the +12 supply will cause both it and the others to sag lightly. If precision reference voltages are needed for peripheral applications, they should be provided for in the peripheral design.

In general, the APPLE II design is conservative with respect to component ratings and operating temperatures. An over-voltage crowbar shutdown system and an auxiliary control feedback loop are provided to ensure that even very unlikely failure modes will not cause damage to the APPLE II computer system. The over-voltage protection references to the DC output voltages only. The AC line voltage input must be within the specified limits, i.e., 107V to 132V.

Under no circumstances, should more than 140 VAC be applied to the input of the power supply. Permanent damage will result.

Since the output voltages are controlled by changing the operating frequency of the converter, and since that frequency has an upper limit determined by the switching speed of power transistors, there then must be a minimum load on the supply; the Apple II board with minimum memory (4K) is well above that minimum load. However, with the board disconnected, there is no load on the supply, and the internal over-voltage protection circuitry causes the supply to turn off. A 9 watt load distributed roughly 50-50 between the +5 and +12 supply is the nominal minimum load.

Nominal load current ratios are: The +12V supply load is  $\frac{1}{2}$  that of the +5V.  
The - 5V supply load is  $\frac{1}{10}$  that of the +5V.  
The -12V supply load is  $\frac{1}{10}$  that of the +5V.

The supply voltages are  $+5.0 \pm 0.15$  volts,  $+11.8 \pm 0.5$  volts,  $-12.0 \pm 1V$ ,  $-5.2 \pm 0.5$  volts. The tolerances are greatly reduced when the loads are close to nominal.

The Apple II power supply will power the Apple II board and all present and forthcoming plug-in cards, we recommend the use of low power TTL, CMOS, etc. so that the total power drawn is within the thermal limits of the entire system. In particular, the user should keep the total power drawn by any one card to less than 1.5 watts, and the total current drawn by all the cards together within the following limits:

- + 12V - use no more than 250 mA
- + 5V - use no more than 500 mA
- 5V - use no more than 200 mA
- 12V - use no more than 200 mA

The power supply is allowed to run indefinitely under short circuit or open circuit conditions.

CAUTION: There are dangerous high voltages inside the power supply case. Much of the internal circuitry is NOT isolated from the power line, and special equipment is needed for service. NO REPAIR BY THE USER IS ALLOWED.

## NOTES ON INTERFACING WITH THE HOME TV

Accessories are available to aid the user in connecting the Apple II system to a home color TV with a minimum of trouble. These units are called "RF Modulators" and they generate a radio frequency signal corresponding to the carrier of one or two of the lower VHF television bands; 61.25 MHz (channel 3) or 67.25 MHz (channel 4). This RF signal is then modulated with the composite video signal generated by the Apple II.

Users report success with the following RF modulators:

the "PixieVerter" (a kit)  
ATV Research  
13th and Broadway  
Dakota City, Nebraska 68731

the "TV-1" (a kit)  
UHF Associates  
6037 Haviland Ave.  
Whittier, CA 90601

the "Sup-r-Mod" by (assembled & tested)  
M&R Enterprises  
P.O. Box 1011  
Sunnyvale, CA 94088

the RF Modulator (a P.C. board)  
Electronics Systems  
P.O. Box 212  
Burlingame, CA 94010

Most of the above are available through local computer stores.

The Apple II owner who wishes to use one of these RF Modulators should read the following notes carefully.

All these modulators have a free running transistor oscillator. The M&R Enterprises unit is pre-tuned to Channel 4. The PixieVerter and the TV-1 have tuning by means of a jumper on the P.C. board and a small trimmer capacitor. All these units have a residual FM which may cause trouble if the TV set in use has a IF pass band with excessive ripple. The unit from M&R has the least residual FM.

All the units except the M&R unit are kits to be built and tuned by the customer. All the kits are incomplete to some extent. The unit from Electronics Systems is just a printed circuit board with assembly instructions. The kits from UHF Associates and ATV do not have an RF cable or a shielded box or a balun transformer, or an antenna switch. The M&R unit is complete.

Some cautions are in order. The Apple II, by virtue of its color graphics capability, operates the TV set in a linear mode rather than the 100% contrast mode satisfactory for displaying text. For this reason, radio frequency interference (RFI) generated by a computer (or peripherals) will beat with the

carrier of the RF modulator to produce faint spurious background patterns" (called "worms") This RFI "trash" must be of quite a low level if worms are to be prevented. In fact, these spurious beats must be 40 to 50db below the signal level to reduce worms to an acceptable level. When it is remembered that only 2 to 6 mV (across 300Ω) is presented to the VHF input of the TV set, then stray RFI getting into the TV must be less than 50μV to obtain a clean picture. Therefore we recommend that a good, co-ax cable be used to carry the signal from any modulator to the TV set, such as RG/59u (with copper shield), Belden #8241 or an equivalent miniature type such as Belden #8218. We also recommend that the RF modulator be enclosed in a tight metal box (an unpainted die cast aluminum box such as Pomona #2428). Even with these precautions, some trouble may be encountered with worms, and can be greatly helped by threading the coax cable connecting the modulator to the TV set repeatedly through a Ferrite toroid core. Apple Computer supplies these cores in a kit, along with a 4 circuit connector/cable assembly to match the auxilliary video connector found on the Apple II board. This kit has order number A2M010X. The M&R "Sup-r-Mod" is supplied with a coax cable and toroids.

Any computer containing fast switching logic and high frequency clocks will radiate some radio frequency energy. Apple II is equipped with a good line filter and many other precautions have been taken to minimize radiated energy. The user is urged not to connect "antennas" to this computer; wires strung about carrying clocks and/data will act as antennas, and subsequent radiated energy may prove to be a nuisance.

Another caution concerns possible long term effects on the TV picture tube. Most home TV sets have "Brightness" and "Contrast" controls with a very wide range of adjustment. When an un-changing picture is displayed with high brightness for a long period, a faint discoloration of the TV CRT may occur as an inverse pattern observable with the TV set turned off. This condition may be avoided by keeping the "Brightness" turned down slightly and "Contrast" moderate.

## A SIMPLE SERIAL OUTPUT

The Apple II is equipped with a 16 pin DIP socket most frequently used to connect potentiometers, switches, etc. to the computer for paddle control and other game applications. This socket, located at J-14, has outputs available as well. With an appropriate machine language program, these output lines may be used to serialize data in a format suitable for a teletype. A suitable interface circuit must be built since the outputs are merely LSTTL and won't run a teletype without help. Several interface circuits are discussed below and the user may pick the one best suited to his needs.

### The ASR - 33 Teletype

The ASR - 33 Teletype of recent vintage has a transistor circuit to drive its solenoids. This circuit is quite easy to interface to, since it is provided with its own power supply. (Figure 1a) It can be set up for a 20mA current loop and interfaced as follows (whether or not the teletype is strapped for full duplex or half duplex operation):

- a) The yellow wire and purple wire should both go to terminal 9 of Terminal Strip X. If the purple wire is going to terminal 8, then remove it and relocate it at terminal 9. This is necessary to change from the 60mA current loop to the 20mA current loop.
- b) Above Terminal Strip X is a connector socket identified as "2". Pin 8 is the input line + or high; Pin 7 is the input line - or low. This connector mates with a Molex receptacle model 1375 #03-09-2151 or #03-09-2153. Recommended terminals are Molex #02-09-2136. An alternate connection method is via spade lugs to Terminal Strip X, terminal 7 (the + input line) and 6 (the - input line).
- c) The following circuit can be built on a 16 pin DIP component carrier and then plugged into the Apple's 16 pin socket found at J-14: (The junction of the 3.3k resistor and the transistor base lead is floating). Pins 16 and 9 are used as tie points as they are unconnected on the Apple board. (Figure 1a).

## The "RS - 232 Interface"

For this interface to be legitimate, it is necessary to twice invert the signal appearing at J-14 pin 15 and have it swing more than 5 volts both above and below ground. The following circuit does that but requires that both +12 and -12 supplies be used. (Figure 2) Snipping off pins on the DIP-component carrier will allow the spare terminals to be used for tie points. The output ground connects to pin 7 of the DB-25 connector. The signal output connects to pin 3 of the DB-25 connector. The "protective" ground wire normally found on pin 1 of the DB-25 connector may be connected to the Apple's base plate if desired. Placing a #4 lug under one of the four power supply mounting screws is perhaps the simplest method. The +12 volt supply is easily found on the auxiliary Video connector (see Figure S-11 or Figure 7 of the manual). The -12 volt supply may be found at pin 33 of the peripheral connectors (see Figure 4) or at the power supply connector (see Figure 5 of the manual).

## A Serial Out Machine Center Language Program

Once the appropriate circuit has been selected and constructed a machine language program is needed to drive the circuit. Figure 3 lists such a teletype output machine language routine. It can be used in conjunction with an Integer BASIC program that doesn't require page \$300 hex of memory. This program resides in memory from \$370 to \$3E9. Columns three and four of the listing show the op-code used. To enter this program into the Apple II the following procedure is followed:

### Entering Machine Language Program

1. Power up Apple II
2. Depress and release the "RESET" key. An asterick and flashing cursor should appear on the left hand side of the screen below the random text matrix.
3. Now type in the data from columns one, two and three for each line from \$370 to \$3E9. For example, type in "370: A9 82" and then depress and release the "RETURN" key. Then repeat this procedure for the data at \$372 and on until you complete entering the program.

### Executing this Program

1. From BASIC a CALL 880 (\$370) will start the execution of this program. It will use the teletype or suitable 80 column printer as the primary output device.

2. PR#0 will inactivate the printer transferring control back to the Video monitor as the primary output device.
3. In Monitor mode \$370G activates the printer and hitting the "RESET" key exits the program.

#### Saving the Machine Language Program

After the machine language program has been entered and checked for accuracy it should, for convenience, be saved on tape - that is unless you prefer to enter it by keyboard every time you want to use it.

The way it is saved is as follows:

1. Insert a blank program cassette into the tape recorder and rewind it.
2. Hit the "RESET" key. The system should move into Monitor mode. An asterick "\*" and flashing cursor should appear on the left-hand side of the screen.
3. Type in "370.03E9W 370.03E9W".
4. Start the tape recorder in record mode and depress the "RETURN" key.
5. When the program has been written to tape, the asterick and flashing cursor will reappear.

#### The Program

After entering, checking and saving the program perform the following procedure to get a feeling of how the program is used:

1. B<sup>C</sup> (control B) into BASIC
2. Turn the teletype (printer on)
3. Type in the following
 

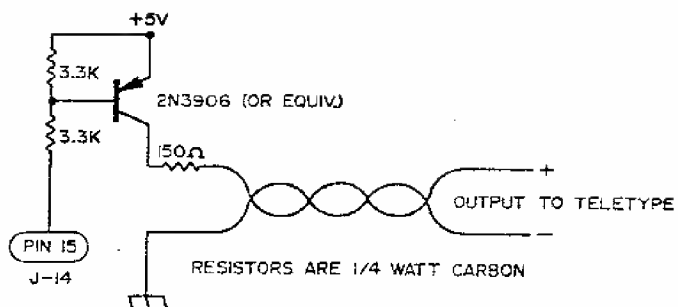
```
10 CALL 880
15 PRINT "ABCD...XYZ01123456789"
20 PR#0
25 END
```
4. Type in RUN and hit the "RETURN" key. The text in line 15 should be printed on the teletype and control is returned to the keyboard and Video monitor.

Line 10 activates the teletype machine routine and all "PRINT" statements following it will be printed to the teletype until a PR#0 statement is encountered. Then the text in line 15 will appear on the teletype's output. Line 20 deactivates the printer and the program ends on line 25.

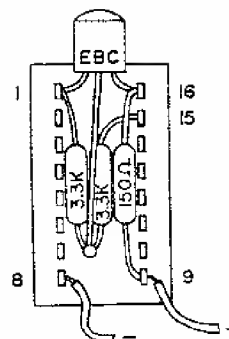
#### Conclusion

With the circuits and machine language program described in this paper the user may develop a relatively simple serial output interface to an ASR-33 or RS-232 compatible printers. This circuit can be activated through BASIC or monitor modes. And is a valuable addition to any users program library.





(a)



(b)

FIGURE 1 ASR-33

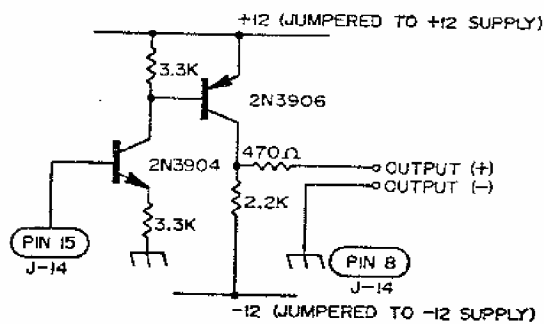


FIGURE 2 RS-232

3:42 P.M., 11/18/1977

```

1 TITLE 'TELETYPE DRIVER ROUTINES'
2 *****
3 *
4 * TTYDRIVER: *
5 * TELETYPE OUTPUT *
6 * ROUTINE FOR 72 *
7 * COLUMN PRINT WITH *
8 * BASIC LIST *
9 *
10 * COPYRIGHT 1977 BY: *
11 * APPLE COMPUTER INC. *
12 * 11/18/77 *
13 *
14 * R. WIGGINTON *
15 * S. WOZNIAK *
16 *
17 *****
18 WNDWIDTH EQU $21 ;FOR APPLE-II
19 CH EQU $24 ;CURSOR HORIZ.
20 CSWL EQU $36 ;CHAR. OUT SWITCH
21 YSAVE EQU $778
22 COLCNT EQU $7F8 ;COLUMN COUNT LOC.
23 MARK EQU $C058
24 SPACE EQU $C059
25 WAIT EQU $FCAB
26 ORG $370
***WARNING: OPERAND OVERFLOW IN LINE 27
0370: A9 82 27 TTINIT: LDA #TTOUT ;POINT TO TTY ROUTINES
0372: 85 36 28 STA CSWL ;HIGH BYTE
0374: A9 03 29 LDA #TTOUT/256
0376: 85 37 30 STA CSWL+1
0378: A9 48 31 LDA #72 ;SET WINDOW WIDTH
037A: 85 21 32 STA WNDWIDTH ;TO NUMBER COLUMNS ONLY
037C: A5 24 33 LDA CH
037E: 8D F8 07 34 STA COLCNT ;WHERE WE ARE NOW.
0381: 60 35 RTS
0382: 48 36 TTOUT: PHA ;SAVE TWICE
0383: 48 37 PHA ;ON STACK.
0384: AD F8 07 38 TTOUT2: LDA COLCNT ;CHECK FOR A TAB.
0387: C5 24 39 CMP CH
0389: 68 40 PLA
038A: B0 03 41 BCS TESTCTRL ;RESTORE OUTPUT CHAR.
038C: 48 42 PHA ;IF C SET, NO TAB
038D: A9 A0 43 LDA #A0 ;PRINT A SPACE.
038F: 2C C0 03 44 TESTCTRL: BIT RTS1 ;TRICK TO DETERMINE
0392: F0 03 45 BEQ PRNTIT ;IF CONTROL CHAR.
0394: EE F8 07 46 INC COLCNT ;IF NOT, ADD ONE TO CM
0397: 20 C1 03 47 PRNTIT: JSR DOCHAR ;PRINT THE CHAR ON TTY
039A: 68 48 PLA ;RESTORE CHAR
039B: 48 49 PHA ;AND PUT BACK ON STACK
039C: 90 E6 50 BCC TTOUT2 ;DO MORE SPACES FOR TAB
039E: 49 0D 51 EOR #0D ;CHECK FOR CAR RET.
03A0: 0A 52 ASL A ;ELIM PARITY
03A1: D0 0D 53 BNE FINISH ;IF NOT CR, DONE.

```

FIGURE 3a

## TELETYPE DRIVER ROUTINES

PAGE: 2

3:42 P.M., 11/13/1977

|       |             |                                                   |                        |
|-------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 03A3: | 3D F8 07 54 | STA COLCNT                                        | ;CLEAR COLUMN COUNT    |
| 03A6: | A9 8A 55    | LDA #38A                                          | ;NOW DO LINE FEED      |
| 03A8: | 20 C1 03 56 | JSR DOCHAR                                        |                        |
| 03AB: | A9 58 57    | LDA #553                                          |                        |
| 03AD: | 20 A8 FC 58 | JSR WAIT                                          | ;200MSEC DELAY FOR     |
| 03B0: | AD F8 07 59 | LDA COLCNT                                        | ;CHECK IF IN MARG      |
| 03B3: | F0 08 60    | BEQ SETCH                                         | ;FOR CR, RESET CH      |
| 03B5: | E5 21 61    | SBC WNDWDTH                                       | ;IF SO, CARRY SET.     |
| 03B7: | E9 F7 62    | SBC #5F7                                          |                        |
| 03B9: | 90 04 63    | BCC RETURN                                        |                        |
| 03BB: | 69 1F 64    | ADC #51F                                          | ;ADJUST CH             |
| 03BD: | 85 24 65    | SETCH: STA CH                                     |                        |
| 03BF: | 68 66       | RETURN: PLA                                       |                        |
| 03C0: | 60 67       | RTS1: RTS                                         | ;RETURN TO CALLER      |
|       | 68          | * HERE IS THE TELETYPE PRINT A CHARACTER ROUTINE: |                        |
| 03C1: | 8C 78 07 69 | DOCHAR: STY YSAVE                                 |                        |
| 03C4: | 08 70       | PHP                                               | ;SAVE STATUS.          |
| 03C5: | A0 0B 71    | LDY #30B                                          | ;11 BITS (1 START, 9 ) |
| 03C7: | 18 72       | CLC                                               | ;BEGIN WITH SPACE (ST) |
| 03C8: | 48 73       | TTOUT3: PHA                                       | ;SAVE A REG AND SET FO |
| 03C9: | 80 05 74    | BCC MARKOUT                                       |                        |
| 03CB: | AD 59 C0 75 | LDA SPACE                                         | ;SEND A SPACE          |
| 03CE: | 90 03 76    | BCC TTOUT4                                        |                        |
| 03D0: | AD 58 C0 77 | MARKOUT: LDA MARK                                 | ;SEND A MARK           |
| 03D3: | A9 D7 78    | TTOUT4: LDA #3D7                                  | ;DELAY 9.091 MSEC FOR  |
| 03D5: | 48 79       | DLY1: PHA                                         | ;110 BAUD              |
| 03D6: | A9 20 80    | LDA #320                                          |                        |
| 03D8: | 4A 81       | DLY2: LSR A                                       |                        |
| 03D9: | 90 FD 82    | BCC DLY2                                          |                        |
| 03DB: | 68 83       | PLA                                               |                        |
| 03DC: | E9 01 84    | SBC #301                                          |                        |
| 03DE: | D0 F5 85    | BNE DLY1                                          |                        |
| 03E0: | 68 86       | PLA                                               |                        |
| 03E1: | 6A 87       | ROR A                                             | ;NEXT BIT (STOP BITS ) |
| 03E2: | 88 88       | DEY                                               | LOOP 11 BITS.          |
| 03E3: | D0 E3 89    | BNE TTOUT3                                        |                        |
| 03E5: | AC 78 07 90 | LDY YSAVE                                         | ;RESTORE Y-REG.        |
| 03E8: | 28 91       | PLP                                               | ;RESTORE STATUS        |
| 03E9: | 60 92       | RTS                                               | ;RETURN                |

\*\*\*\*\*SUCCESSFUL ASSEMBLY: NO ERRORS

FIGURE 3b

CROSS-REFERENCE: TELETYPE DRIVER ROUTINES

|          |      |                          |
|----------|------|--------------------------|
| CH       | 0024 | 0033 0039 0065           |
| COLCNT   | 07F8 | 0034 0038 0046 0054 0059 |
| CSWL     | 0036 | 0028 0030                |
| LY1      | 03D5 | 0085                     |
| LY2      | 03D8 | 0082                     |
| DOCHAR   | 03C1 | 0047 0056                |
| FINISH   | 03B0 | 0053                     |
| MARK     | C058 | 0077                     |
| MARKOUT  | 03D0 | 0074                     |
| PRNTIT   | 0397 | 0045                     |
| RETURN   | 03BF | 0063                     |
| RTS1     | 03C0 | 0044                     |
| SETCH    | 03BD | 0060                     |
| SPACE    | C059 | 0075                     |
| TESTCTRL | 038F | 0041                     |
| TTINIT   | 0370 |                          |
| TTOUT    | 0382 | 0027 0029                |
| TTOUT2   | 0384 | 0050                     |
| TTOUT3   | 03C8 | 0089                     |
| TTOUT4   | 03D3 | 0076                     |
| WAIT     | FCA8 | 0058                     |
| WNDWIDTH | 0021 | 0032 0061                |
| YSAVE    | 0778 | 0069- 0090               |
| ILE:     |      |                          |

FIGURE 3c

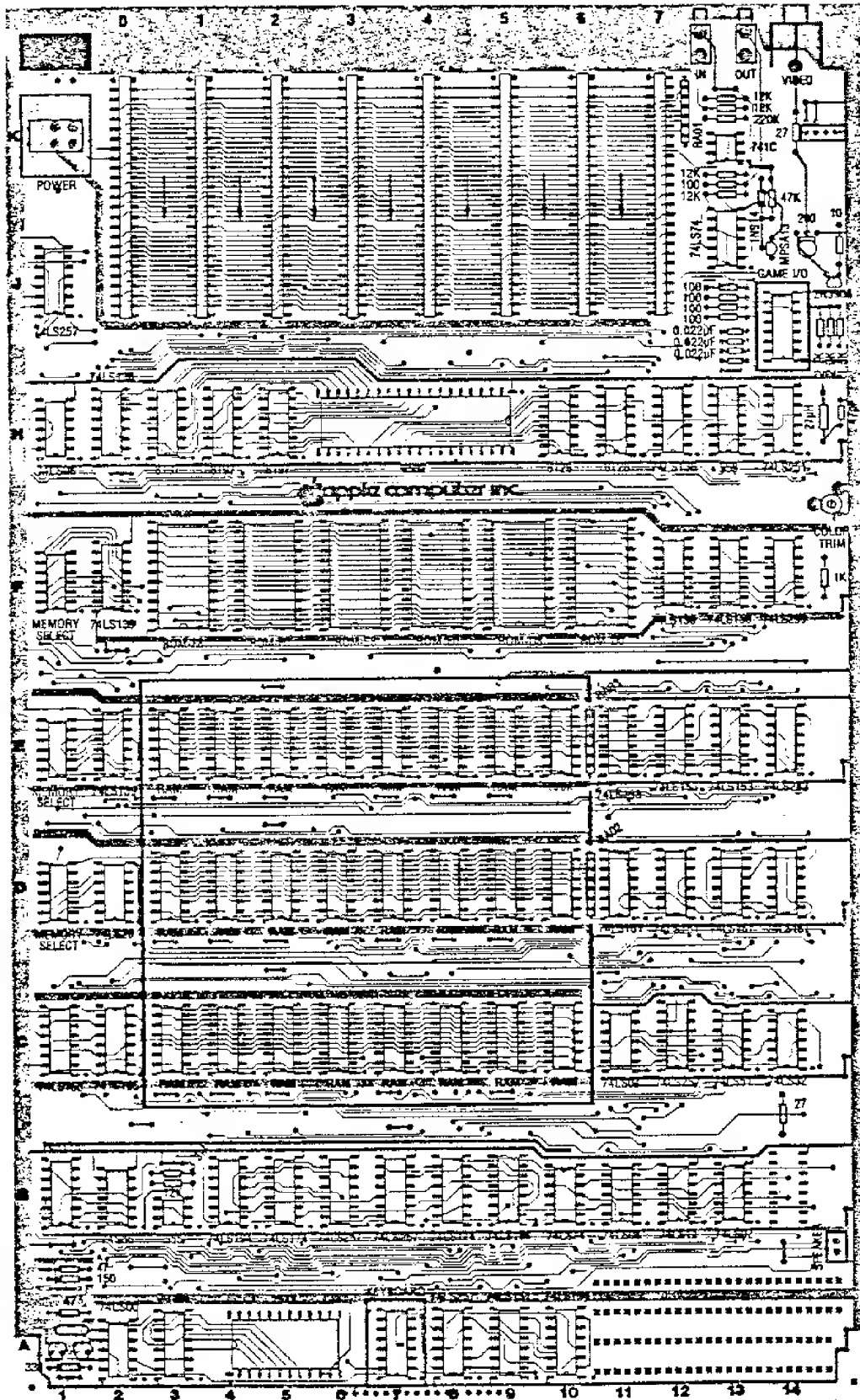
## INTERFACING THE APPLE

This section defines the connections by which external devices are attached to the APPLE II board. Included are pin diagrams, signal descriptions, loading constraints and other useful information.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. CONNECTOR LOCATION DIAGRAM
2. CASSETTE DATA JACKS (2 EACH)
3. GAME I/O CONNECTOR
4. KEYBOARD CONNECTOR
5. PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS (8 EACH)
6. POWER CONNECTOR
7. SPEAKER CONNECTOR
8. VIDEO OUTPUT JACK
9. AUXILIARY VIDEO OUTPUT CONNECTOR

Figure 1A APPLE II Board-Complete View





## CASSETTE JACKS

A convenient means for interfacing an inexpensive audio cassette tape recorder to the APPLE II is provided by these two standard (3.5mm) miniature phone jacks located at the back of the APPLE II board.

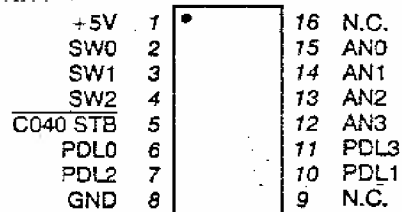
CASSETTE DATA IN JACK: Designed for connection to the "EARPHONE" or "MONITOR" output found on most audio cassette tape recorders.  $V_{IN}=1V_{pp}$  (nominal),  $Z_{IN}=12K\ \Omega$  Ohms. Located at K12 as illustrated in Figure 1.

CASSETTE DATA OUT JACK: Designed for connection to the "MIC" or "MICROPHONE" input found on most audio cassette tape recorders.  $V_{OUT}=25\ mV$  into  $100\ \Omega$  Ohms,  $Z_{OUT}=100\ \Omega$  Ohms. Located at K13 as illustrated in Figure 1.

## GAME I/O CONNECTOR

The Game I/O Connector provides a means for connecting paddle controls, lights and switches to the APPLE II for use in controlling video games, etc. It is a 16 pin IC socket located at J14 and is illustrated in Figure 1 and 2.

Figure 2      GAME I/O CONNECTOR  
TOP VIEW  
( Front Edge of PC Board



LOCATION J14



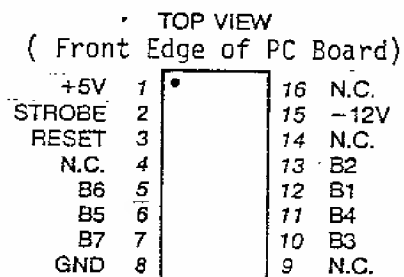
## SIGNAL DESCRIPTIONS FOR GAME I/O

- AN0-AN3: 8 addresses (C058-C05F) are assigned to selectively "SET" or "CLEAR" these four "ANNUNCIATOR" outputs. Envisioned to control indicator lights, each is a 74LSxx series TTL output and must be buffered if used to drive lamps.
- C040 STB: A utility strobe output. Will go low during  $\phi_2$  of a read or write cycle to addresses C040-C04F. This is a 74LSxx series TTL output.
- GND: System circuit ground. 0 Volt line from power supply.
- NC: No connection.
- 
- PDL0-PDL3: Paddle control inputs. Requires a 0-150K ohm variable resistance and +5V for each paddle. Internal 100 ohm resistors are provided in series with external pot to prevent excess current if pot goes completely to zero ohms.
- 
- SW0-SW2: Switch inputs. Testable by reading from addresses C061-C063 (or C069-C06B). These are uncommitted 74LSxx series inputs.
- +5V: Positive 5-Volt supply. To avoid burning out the connector pin, current drain MUST be less than 100mA.

## KEYBOARD CONNECTOR

This connector provides the means for connecting an ASCII keyboard to the APPLE II board. It is a 16 pin IC socket located at A7 and is illustrated in Figures 1 and 3.

Figure 3 KEYBOARD CONNECTOR



LOCATION A7

#### SIGNAL DESCRIPTION FOR KEYBOARD INTERFACE

- B1-B7: 7 bit ASCII data from keyboard, positive logic (high level="1"), TTL logic levels expected.
- GND: System circuit ground. 0 Volt line from power supply.
- NC: No connection.
- RESET: System reset input. Requires switch closure to ground.
- STROBE: Strobe output from keyboard. The APPLE II recognizes the positive going edge of the incoming strobe.
- +5V: Positive 5-Volt supply. To avoid burning out the connector pin, current drain MUST be less than 100mA.
- 12V: Negative 12-Volt supply. Keyboard should draw less than 50mA.

#### PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS

The eight Peripheral Connectors mounted near the back edge of the APPLE II board provide a convenient means of connecting expansion hardware and peripheral devices to the APPLE II I/O Bus. These are Winchester #2HW25C0-111 (or equivalent) 50 pin card edge connectors with pins on .10" centers. Location and pin outs are illustrated in Figures 1 and 4.

#### SIGNAL DESCRIPTION FOR PERIPHERAL I/O

- A0-A15: 16 bit system address bus. Addresses are set up by the 6502 within 300nS after the beginning of  $\phi_1$ . These lines will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

---

DEVICE SELECT: Sixteen addresses are set aside for each peripheral connector. A read or write to such an address will send pin 41 on the selected connector low during  $\phi_2$  (500nS). Each will drive 4 standard TTL loads.

- D0-D7: 8 bit system data bus. During a write cycle data is set up by the 6502 less than 300nS after the beginning of  $\phi_2$ . During a read cycle the 6502 expects data to be ready no less than 100nS before the end of  $\phi_2$ . These lines will drive up to a total of 8 total low power schottky TTL loads.

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <u>DMA:</u>           | Direct Memory Access control output. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output.                                                                                                                         |
| <u>DMA IN:</u>        | Direct Memory Access daisy chain input from higher priority peripheral devices. Will present no more than 4 standard TTL loads to the driving device.                                                                                                 |
| <u>DMA OUT:</u>       | Direct Memory Access daisy chain output to lower priority peripheral devices. This line will drive 4 standard TTL loads.                                                                                                                              |
| <u>GND:</u>           | System circuit ground. 0 Volt line from power supply.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <u>INH:</u>           | Inhibit Line. When a device pulls this line low, all ROM's on board are disabled (Hex addressed D000 through FFFF). This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output.                                          |
| <u>INT IN:</u>        | Interrupt daisy chain input from higher priority peripheral devices. Will present no more than 4 standard TTL loads to the driving device.                                                                                                            |
| <u>INT OUT:</u>       | Interrupt daisy chain output to lower priority peripheral devices. This line will drive 4 standard TTL loads.                                                                                                                                         |
| <u>I/O SELECT:</u>    | 256 addresses are set aside for each peripheral connector (see address map in "MEMORY" section). A read or write of such an address will send pin 1 on the selected connector low during $\phi_2$ (500nS). This line will drive 4 standard TTL loads. |
| <u>I/O STROBE:</u>    | Pin 20 on all peripheral connectors will go low during $\phi_2$ of a read or write to any address C800-CFFF. This line will drive a total of 4 standard TTL loads.                                                                                    |
| <u>IRQ:</u>           | Interrupt request line to the 6502. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output. It is active low.                                                                                                        |
| <u>NC:</u>            | No connection.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <u>NMI:</u>           | Non Maskable Interrupt request line to the 6502. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output. It is active low.                                                                                           |
| <u>Q<sub>3</sub>:</u> | A 1MHz (nonsymmetrical) general purpose timing signal. Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.                                                                                                                                             |
| <u>RDY:</u>           | "Ready" line to the 6502. This line should change only during $\phi_1$ , and when low will halt the microprocessor at the next READ cycle. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output.                   |
| <u>RES:</u>           | Reset line from "RESET" key on keyboard. Active low. Will drive 2 MOS loads per Peripheral Connector.                                                                                                                                                 |

R/W: READ/WRITE line from 6502. When high indicates that a read cycle is in progress, and when low that a write cycle is in progress. This line will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

USER 1: The function of this line will be described in a later document.

$\phi_0$ : Microprocessor phase 0 clock. Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

$\phi_1$ : Phase 1 clock, complement of  $\phi_0$ . Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

7M: Seven MHz high frequency clock. Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

+12V: Positive 12-Volt supply.

+5V: Positive 5-Volt supply.

-5V: Negative 5-Volt supply.

-12V: Negative 12-Volt supply.

#### POWER CONNECTOR

The four voltages required by the APPLE II are supplied via this AMP #9-35028-1,6 pin connector. See location and pin out in Figures 1 and 5.

#### PIN DESCRIPTION

GND: (2 pins) system circuit ground. 0 Volt line from power supply.

+12V: Positive 12-Volt line from power supply.

+5V: Positive 5-Volt line from power supply.

-5V: Negative 5-Volt line from power supply.

-12V: Negative 5-Volt line from power supply.

Figure 4 PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS  
(EIGHT OF EACH)

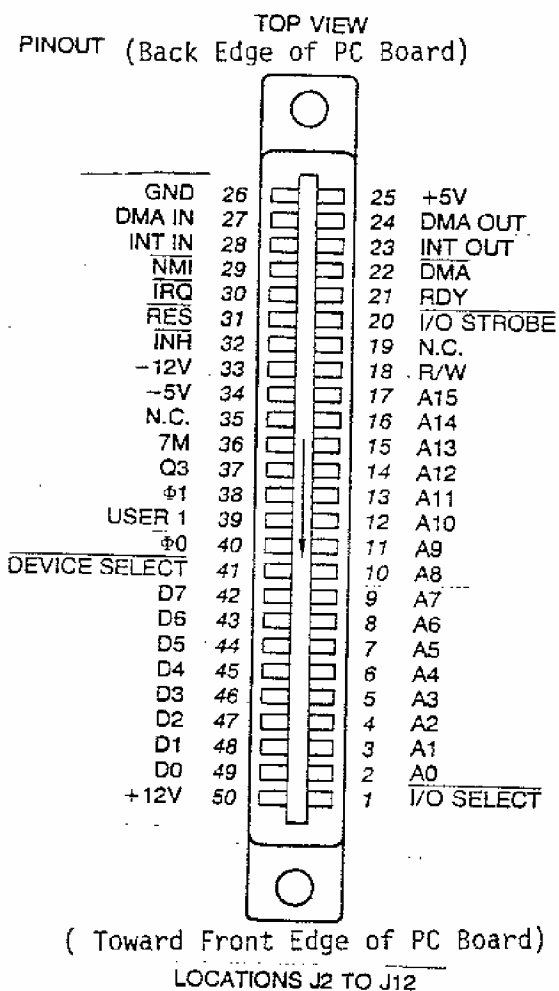
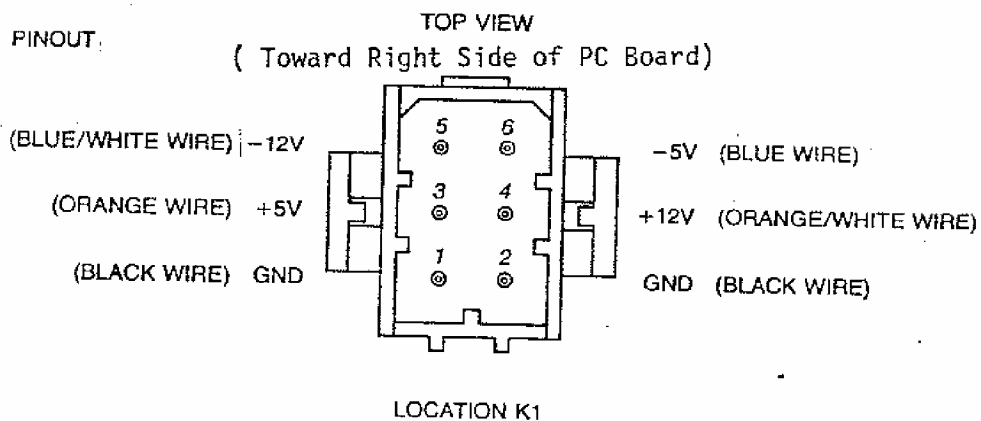


Figure 5 POWER CONNECTOR



### SPEAKER CONNECTOR

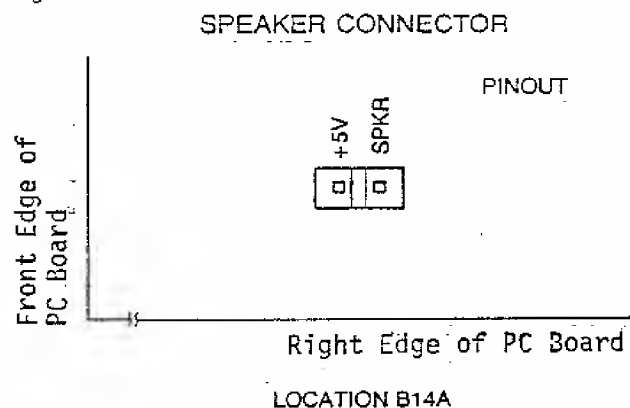
This is a MOLEX KK 100 series connector with two .25" square pins on .10" centers. See location and pin out in Figures 1 and 6.

### SIGNAL DESCRIPTION FOR SPEAKER

+5V: System +5 Volts

SPKR: Output line to speaker. Will deliver about .5 watt into 8 Ohms.

Figure 6



### VIDEO OUTPUT JACK

This standard RCA phono jack located at the back edge of the APPLE II P.C. board will supply NTSC compatible, EIA standard, positive composite video to an external video monitor.

A video level control near the connector allows the output level to be adjusted from 0 to 1 Volt (peak) into an external 75 OHM load.

Additional tint (hue) range is provided by an adjustable trimmer capacitor.

See locations illustrated in Figure 1.

## AUXILIARY VIDEO OUTPUT CONNECTOR

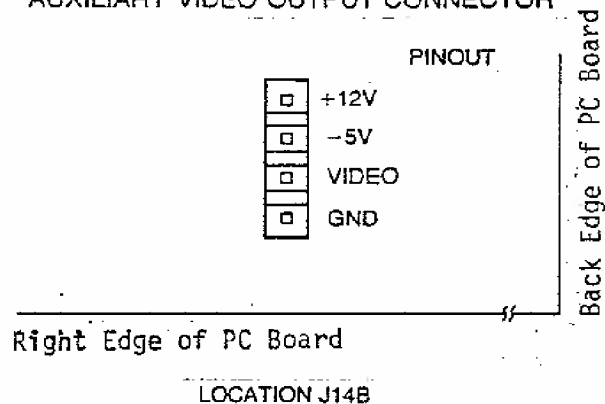
This is a MOLEX KK 100 series connector with four .25" square pins on .10" centers. It provides composite video and two power supply voltages. Video out on this connector is not adjustable by the on board 200 Ohm trim pot. See Figures 1 and 7.

### SIGNAL DESCRIPTION

- GND: System circuit ground. 0 Volt line from power supply.
- VIDEO: NTSC compatible positive composite VIDEO. DC coupled emitter follower output (not short circuit protected). SYNC TIP is 0 Volts, black level is about .75 Volts, and white level is about 2.0 Volts into 470 Ohms. Output level is non-adjustable.
- +12V: +12 Volt line from power supply.
- 5V: -5 Volt line from power supply.

Figure 7

### AUXILIARY VIDEO OUTPUT CONNECTOR



## INSTALLING YOUR OWN RAM

### THE POSSIBILITIES

The APPLE II computer is designed to use dynamic RAM chips organized as 4096 x 1 bit, or 16384 x 1 bit called "4K" and "16K" RAMs respectively. These must be used in sets of 8 to match the system data bus (which is 8 bits wide) and are organized into rows of 8. Thus, each row may contain either 4096 (4K) or 16384 (16K) locations of Random Access Memory depending upon whether 4K or 16K chips are used. If all three rows on the APPLE II board are filled with 4K RAM chips, then 12288 (12K) memory locations will be available for storing programs or data, and if all three rows contain 16K RAM chips then 49152 (commonly called 48K) locations of RAM memory will exist on board!

### RESTRICTIONS

It is quite possible to have the three rows of RAM sockets filled with any combination of 4K RAMs, 16K RAMs or empty as long as certain rules are followed:

1. All sockets in a row must have the same type (4K or 16K) RAMs.
2. There MUST be RAM assigned to the zero block of addresses.

### ASSIGNING RAM

The APPLE II has 48K addresses available for assignment of RAM memory. Since RAM can be installed in increments as small as 4K, a means of selecting which address range each row of memory chips will respond to has been provided by the inclusion of three MEMORY SELECT sockets on board.

Figure 8

#### MEMORY SELECT SOCKETS

TOP VIEW

PINOUT

|                          |   |  |    |                           |
|--------------------------|---|--|----|---------------------------|
| (0000-0FFF) 4K "0" BLOCK | 1 |  | 14 | RAM ROW C                 |
| (1000-1FFF) 4K "1" BLOCK | 2 |  | 13 | RAM ROW D                 |
| (2000-2FFF) 4K "2" BLOCK | 3 |  | 12 | RAM ROW E                 |
| (3000-3FFF) 4K "3" BLOCK | 4 |  | 11 | N.C.                      |
| (4000-4FFF) 4K "4" BLOCK | 5 |  | 10 | 16K "0" BLOCK (0000-3FFF) |
| (5000-5FFF) 4K "5" BLOCK | 6 |  | 9  | 16K "4" BLOCK (4000-7FFF) |
| (6000-6FFF) 4K "6" BLOCK | 7 |  | 8  | 16K "8" BLOCK (8000-BFFF) |

LOCATIONS D1, E1, F1



## MEMORY

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION
2. INSTALLING YOUR OWN RAM
3. MEMORY SELECT SOCKETS
4. MEMORY MAP BY 4K BLOCKS
5. DETAILED MAP OF ASSIGNED ADDRESSES

### INTRODUCTION

APPLE II is supplied completely tested with the specified amount of RAM memory and correct memory select jumpers. There are five different sets of standard memory jumper blocks:

1. 4K 4K 4K BASIC
2. 4K 4K 4K HIRES
3. 16K 4K 4K
4. 16K 16K 4K
5. 16K 16K 16K

A set of three each of one of the above is supplied with the board. Type 1 is supplied with 4K or 8K systems. Both type 1 and 2 are supplied with 12K systems. Type 1 is a contiguous memory range for maximum BASIC program size. Type 2 is non-contiguous and allows 8K dedicated to HIRES screen memory with approximately 2K of user BASIC space. Type 3 is supplied with 16K, 20K and 24K systems. Type 4 with 30K and 36K systems and type 5 with 48K systems.

Additional memory may easily be added just by plugging into sockets along with correct memory jumper blocks.

The 6502 microprocessor generates a 16 bit address, which allows 65536 (commonly called 65K) different memory locations to be specified. For convenience we represent each 16 bit (binary) address as a 4-digit hexadecimal number. Hexadecimal notation (hex) is explained in the Monitor section of this manual.

In the APPLE II, certain address ranges have been assigned to RAM memory, ROM memory, the I/O bus, and hardware functions. The memory and address maps give the details.

## MEMORY SELECT SOCKETS

The location and pin out for memory select sockets are illustrated in Figures 1 and 8.

## HOW TO USE

There are three MEMORY SELECT sockets, located at D1, E1 and F1 respectively. RAM memory is assigned to various address ranges by inserting jumper wires as described below. All three MEMORY SELECT sockets MUST be jumpered identically! The easiest way to do this is to use Apple supplied memory blocks.

Let us learn by example:

If you have plugged 16K RAMs into row "C" (the sockets located at C3-C10 on the board), and you want them to occupy the first 16K of addresses starting at 0000, jumper pin 14 to pin 10 on all three MEMORY SELECT sockets (thereby assigning row "C" to the 0000-3FFF range of memory).

If in addition you have inserted 4K RAMs into rows "D" and "E", and you want them each to occupy the first 4K addresses starting at 4000 and 5000 respectively, jumper pin 13 to pin 5 (thereby assigning row "D" to the 4000-4FFF range of memory), and jumper pin 12 to pin 6 (thereby assigning row "E" to the 5000-5FFF range of memory). Remember to jumper all three MEMORY SELECT sockets the same.

Now you have a large contiguous range of addresses filled with RAM memory. This is the 24K addresses from 0000-5FFF.

By following the above examples you should be able to assign each row of RAM to any address range allowed on the MEMORY SELECT sockets. Remember that to do this properly you must know three things:

1. Which rows have RAM installed?
2. Which address ranges do you want them to occupy?
3. Jumper all three MEMORY SELECT sockets the same!

If you are not sure think carefully, essentially all the necessary information is given above.

# Memory Address Allocations in 4K Bytes

|      |                                                                   |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0000 | text and color graphics display pages, 6502 stack, pointers, etc. |
| 1000 |                                                                   |
| 2000 | high res graphics display primary page                            |
| 3000 | "                                                                 |
| 4000 | high res. graphics display secondary page                         |
| 5000 | "                                                                 |
| 6000 | "                                                                 |
| 7000 | "                                                                 |

|      |
|------|
| 8000 |
| 9000 |
| A000 |
| B000 |
| C000 |
| D000 |
| E000 |
| F000 |

addresses dedicated to hardware functions  
 "  
 "  
 ROM socket D0: spare  
 "  
 ROM socket D8: spare  
 "  
 ROM socket E0: BASIC  
 "  
 ROM socket E8: BASIC  
 "  
 ROM socket F0: BASIC utility  
 ROM socket F8: monitor

# I/O and ROM Address Detail

| HEX ADDRESS | ASSIGNED FUNCTION                  | COMMENTS                                                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| C00X        | Keyboard input.                    | Keyboard strobe appears in bit 7. ASCII data from keyboard appears in the 7 lower bits. |
| C01X        | Clear keyboard strobe.             |                                                                                         |
| C02X        | Toggle cassette output.            |                                                                                         |
| C03X        | Toggle speaker output.             |                                                                                         |
| C04X        | "C040 STB"                         | Output strobe to Game I/O connector.                                                    |
| C050        | -16264 Set graphics mode           |                                                                                         |
| C051        | -16263 " text "                    |                                                                                         |
| C052        | -16262 Set bottom 4 lines graphics |                                                                                         |
| C053        | -16261 " " " " text                |                                                                                         |
| C054        | -16260 Display primary page        |                                                                                         |
| C055        | -16259 " secondary page            |                                                                                         |
| C056        | -16258 Set high res. graphics      |                                                                                         |
| C057        | -16277 " color "                   | Annunciator 0 output to Game I/O connector.                                             |
| C058        | -16276 Clear "AN0"                 |                                                                                         |
| C059        | -16295 Set "                       |                                                                                         |
| C05A        | -16294 Clear "AN1"                 |                                                                                         |
| C05B        | -16293 Set "                       | Annunciator 1 output to Game I/O connector.                                             |
| C05C        | -16292 Clear "AN2"                 |                                                                                         |
| C05D        | -16291 Set "                       |                                                                                         |
| C05E        | -16290 Clear "AN3"                 |                                                                                         |
| C05F        | -16289 Set "                       | Annunciator 2 output to Game I/O connector.                                             |
|             |                                    |                                                                                         |
|             |                                    |                                                                                         |
|             |                                    |                                                                                         |
|             |                                    | Annunciator 3 output to Game I/O connector.                                             |
|             |                                    |                                                                                         |
|             |                                    |                                                                                         |
|             |                                    |                                                                                         |

| HEX ADDRESS | ASSIGNED FUNCTION     | COMMENTS                                                                                            |
|-------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| C060/8      | Cassette input        | State of "Cassette Data In" appears in bit 7.                                                       |
| C061/9      | "SW1"                 | input on State of Switch 1 $\wedge$ Game I/O connector appears in bit 7.                            |
| C062/A      | "SW2"                 | State of Switch 2 input on Game I/O connector appears in bit 7.                                     |
| C063/B      | "SW3"                 | State of Switch 3 input on Game I/O connector appears in bit 7.                                     |
| C064/C      | Paddle 0 timer output | State of timer output for Paddle 0 appears in bit 7.                                                |
| C065/D      | " 1 " "               | State of timer output for Paddle 1 appears in bit 7.                                                |
| C066/E      | " 2 " "               | State of timer output for Paddle 2 appears in bit 7.                                                |
| C067/F      | " 3 " "               | State of timer output for Paddle 3 appears in bit 7.                                                |
| C07X        | "PDL STB"             | Triggers paddle timers during $\phi_2$ .                                                            |
| C08X        | DEVICE SELECT 0       | Pin 41 on the selected Peripheral Connector goes low during $\phi_2$ .<br><br>Expansion connectors. |
| C09X        | " 1                   |                                                                                                     |
| C0AX        | " 2                   |                                                                                                     |
| C0BX        | " 3                   |                                                                                                     |
| C0CX        | " 4                   |                                                                                                     |
| C0DX        | " 5                   |                                                                                                     |
| C0EX        | " 6                   |                                                                                                     |
| C0FX        | " 7                   |                                                                                                     |
| C10X        | " 8                   |                                                                                                     |
| C11X        | " 9                   |                                                                                                     |
| C12X        | " A                   |                                                                                                     |

| ADDRESS   | ASSIGNED FUNCTION | COMMENTS                                                                                                                       |
|-----------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| C13X      | DEVICE SELECT B   | "                                                                                                                              |
| C14X      | " C               | "                                                                                                                              |
| C15X      | " D               | "                                                                                                                              |
| C16X      | " E               | "                                                                                                                              |
| C17X      | " F               | "                                                                                                                              |
| C1XX      | I/O SELECT 1      | Pin 1 on the selected Peripheral Connector goes low during $\phi_2$ .                                                          |
| C2XX      | " 2               | NOTES:<br>1. Peripheral Connector 0 does not get this signal.<br>2. I/O SELECT 1 uses the same addresses as DEVICE SELECT 8-F. |
| C3XX      | " 3               |                                                                                                                                |
| C4XX      | " 4               |                                                                                                                                |
| C5XX      | " 5               |                                                                                                                                |
| C6XX      | " 6               |                                                                                                                                |
| C7XX      | " 7               | Expansion connectors.                                                                                                          |
| C8XX      | " 8, I/O STROBE   |                                                                                                                                |
| C9XX      | " 9, "            |                                                                                                                                |
| CAXX      | " A, "            |                                                                                                                                |
| CBXX      | " B, "            |                                                                                                                                |
| CCXX      | " C, "            |                                                                                                                                |
| CDXX      | " D, "            |                                                                                                                                |
| CEXX      | " E, "            |                                                                                                                                |
| CFXX      | " F, "            |                                                                                                                                |
| D000-D7FF | ROM socket D0     | Spare.                                                                                                                         |
| D800-DFFF | " " D8            | Spare.                                                                                                                         |
| E000-E7FF | " " E0            | BASIC.                                                                                                                         |
| E800-EFFF | " " E8            | BASIC.                                                                                                                         |
| F000-F7FF | " " F0            | 1K of BASIC, 1K of utility.                                                                                                    |
| F800-FFFF | " " F8            | Monitor.                                                                                                                       |

## SYSTEM TIMING

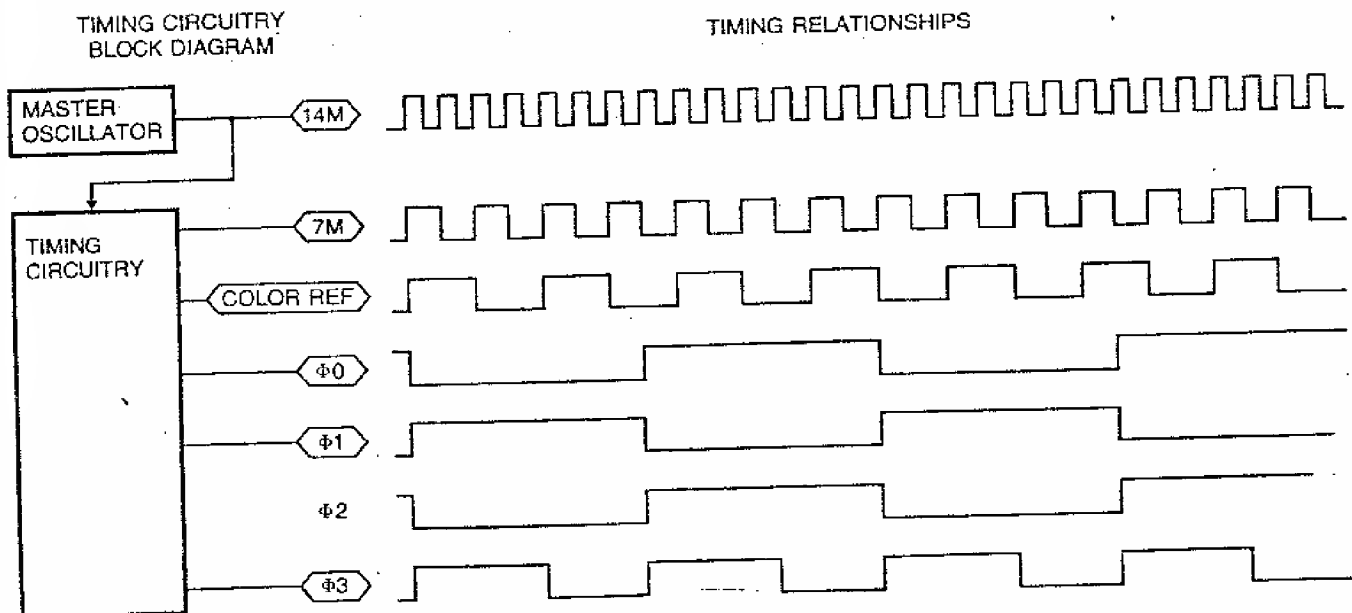
### SIGNAL DESCRIPTIONS

- 14M: Master oscillator output, 14.318 MHz +/- 35 ppm. All other timing signals are derived from this one.
- 7M: Intermediate timing signal, 7.159 MHz.
- COLOR REF: Color reference frequency used by video circuitry, 3.580 MHz.
- $\Phi_0$ : Phase 0 clock to microprocessor, 1.023 MHz nominal.
- $\Phi_1$ : Microprocessor phase 1 clock, complement of  $\Phi_0$ , 1.023 MHz nominal.
- $\Phi_2$ : Same as  $\Phi_0$ . Included here because the 6502 hardware and programming manuals use the designation  $\Phi_2$  instead of  $\Phi_0$ .
- $\Phi_3$ : A general purpose timing signal which occurs at the same rate as the microprocessor clocks but is nonsymmetrical.

### MICROPROCESSOR OPERATIONS

- ADDRESS: The address from the microprocessor changes during  $\Phi_1$ , and is stable about 300nS after the start of  $\Phi_1$ .
- DATA WRITE: During a write cycle, data from the microprocessor appears on the data bus during  $\Phi_2$ , and is stable about 300nS after the start of  $\Phi_2$ .
- DATA READ: During a read cycle, the microprocessor will expect data to appear on the data bus no less than 100nS prior to the end of  $\Phi_2$ .

### SYSTEM TIMING DIAGRAM



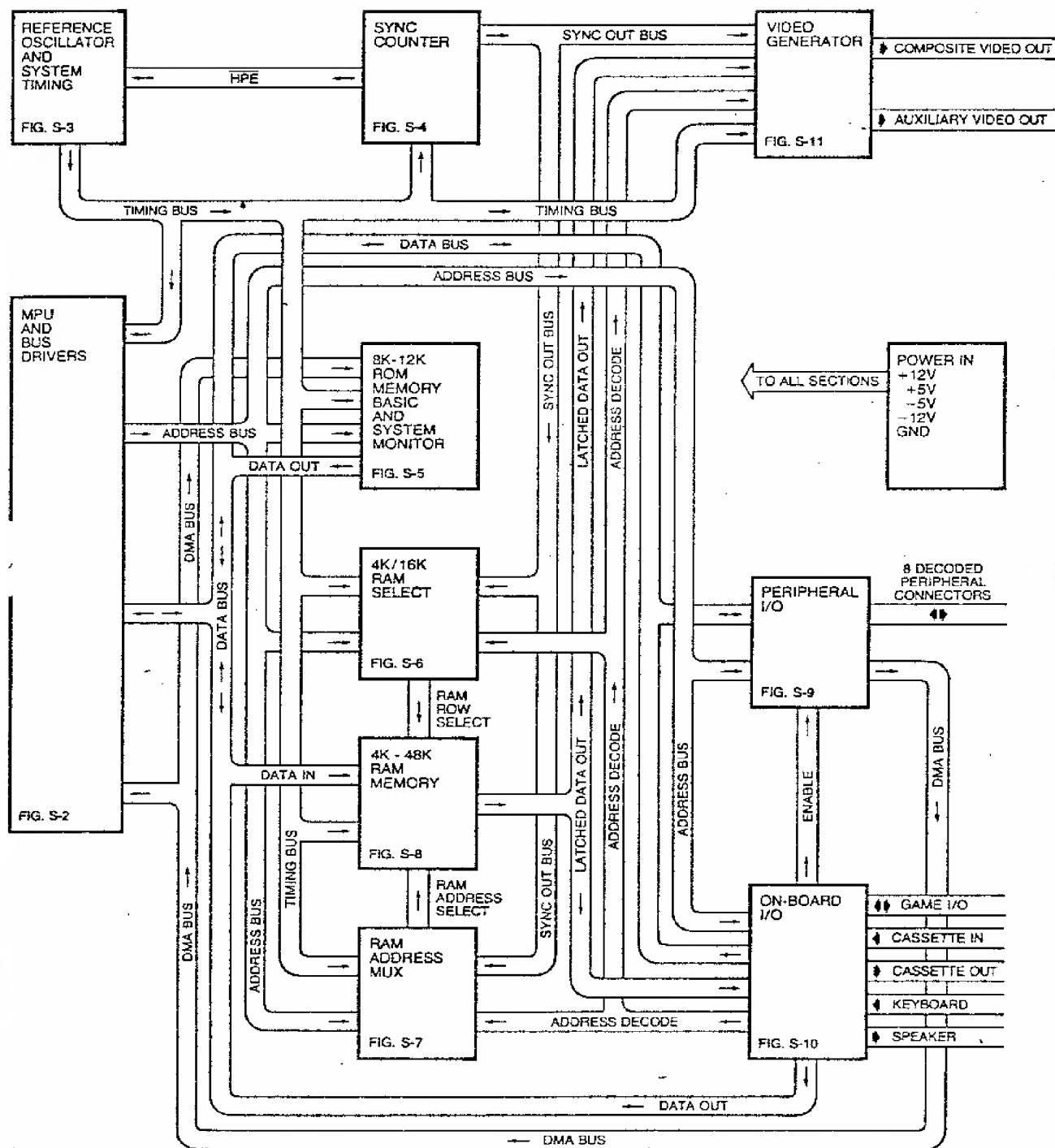


FIGURE S-1 APPLE II SYSTEM DIAGRAM



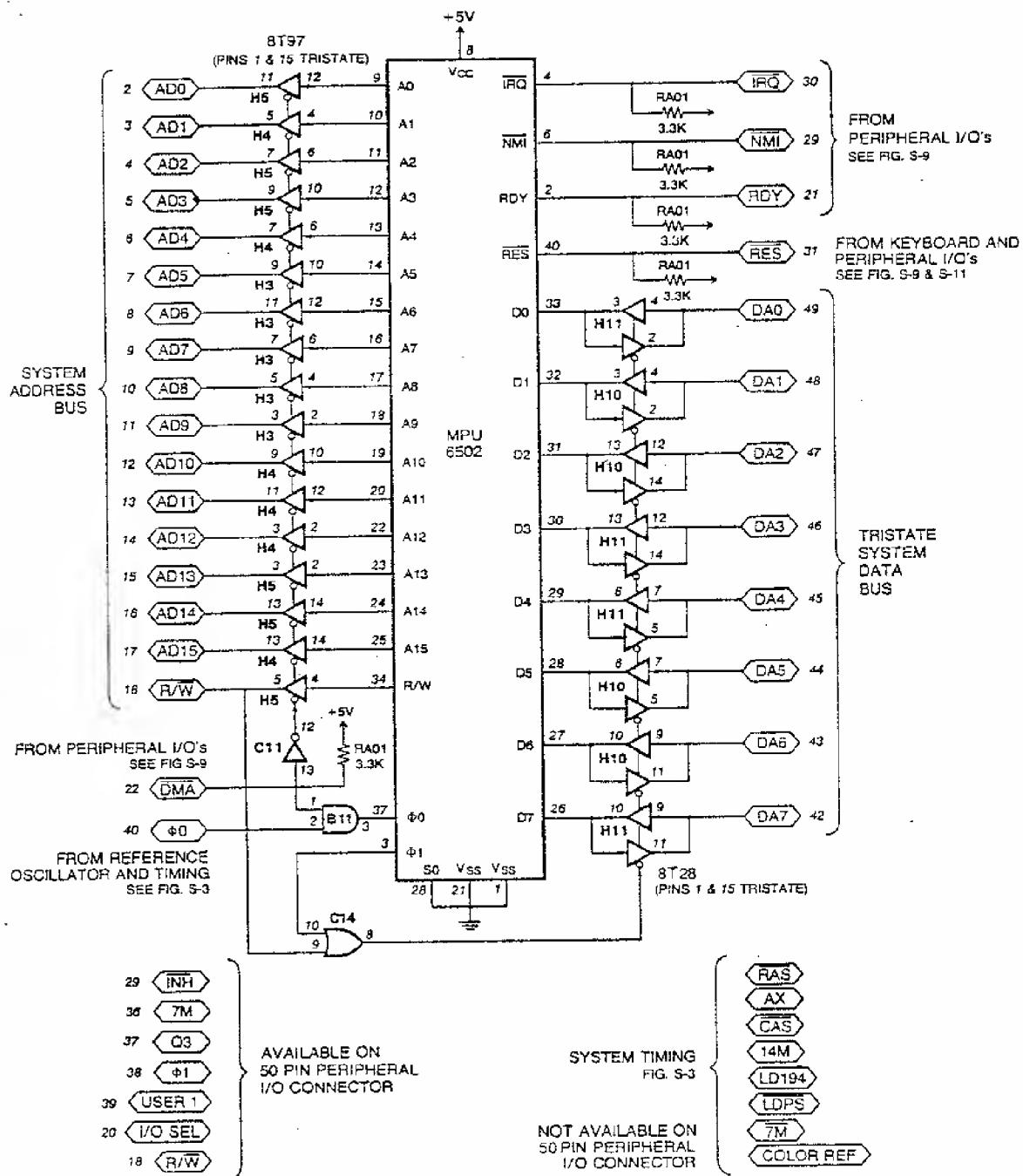


FIGURE S-2 MPU AND SYSTEM BUS

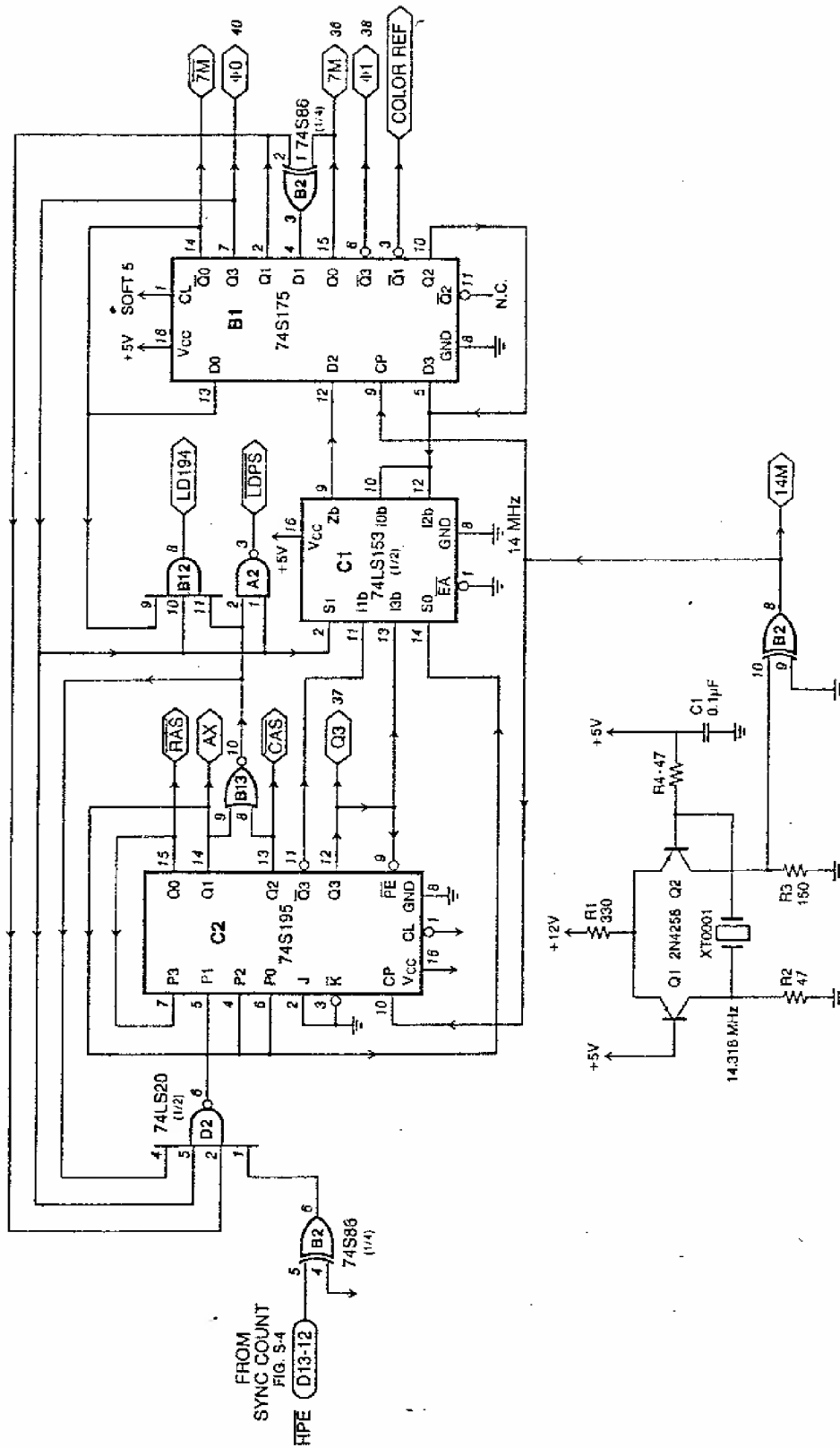


FIGURE S-3 REFERENCE OSCILLATOR AND SYSTEM TIMING

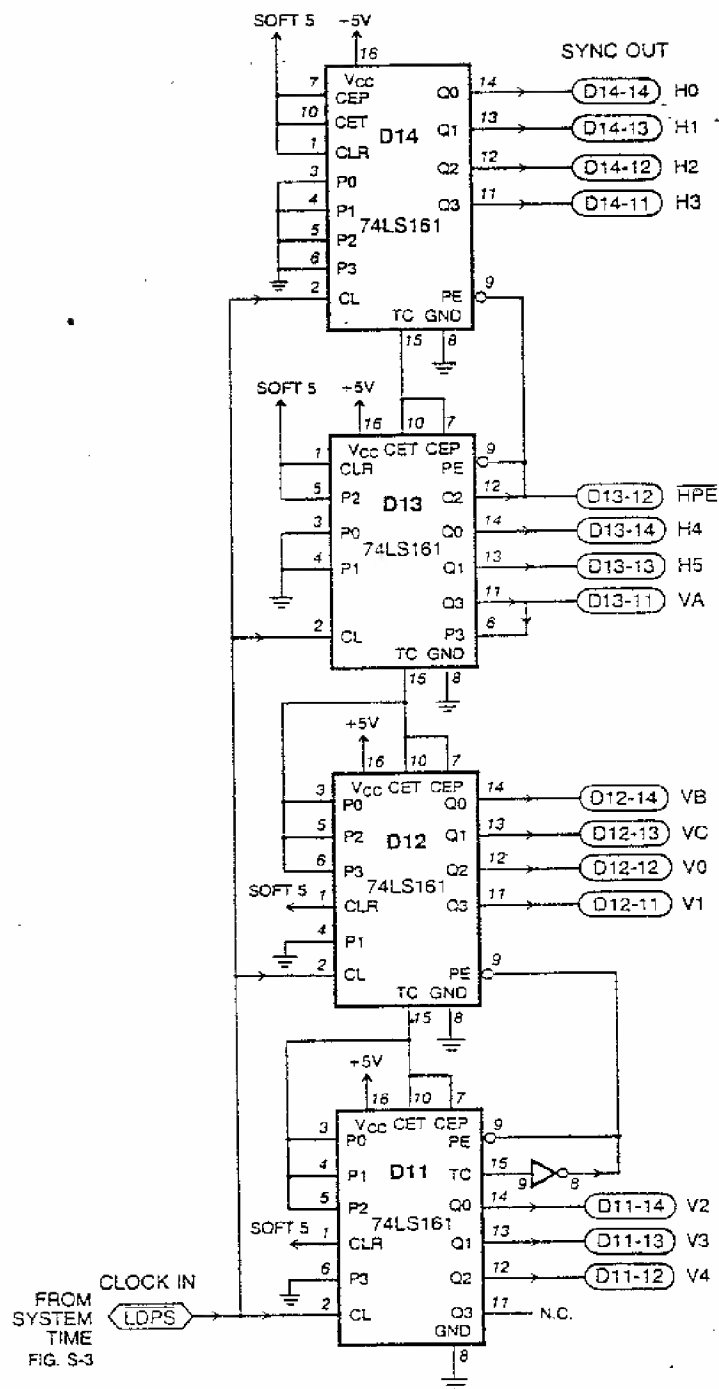


FIGURE S-4 SYNC COUNTER

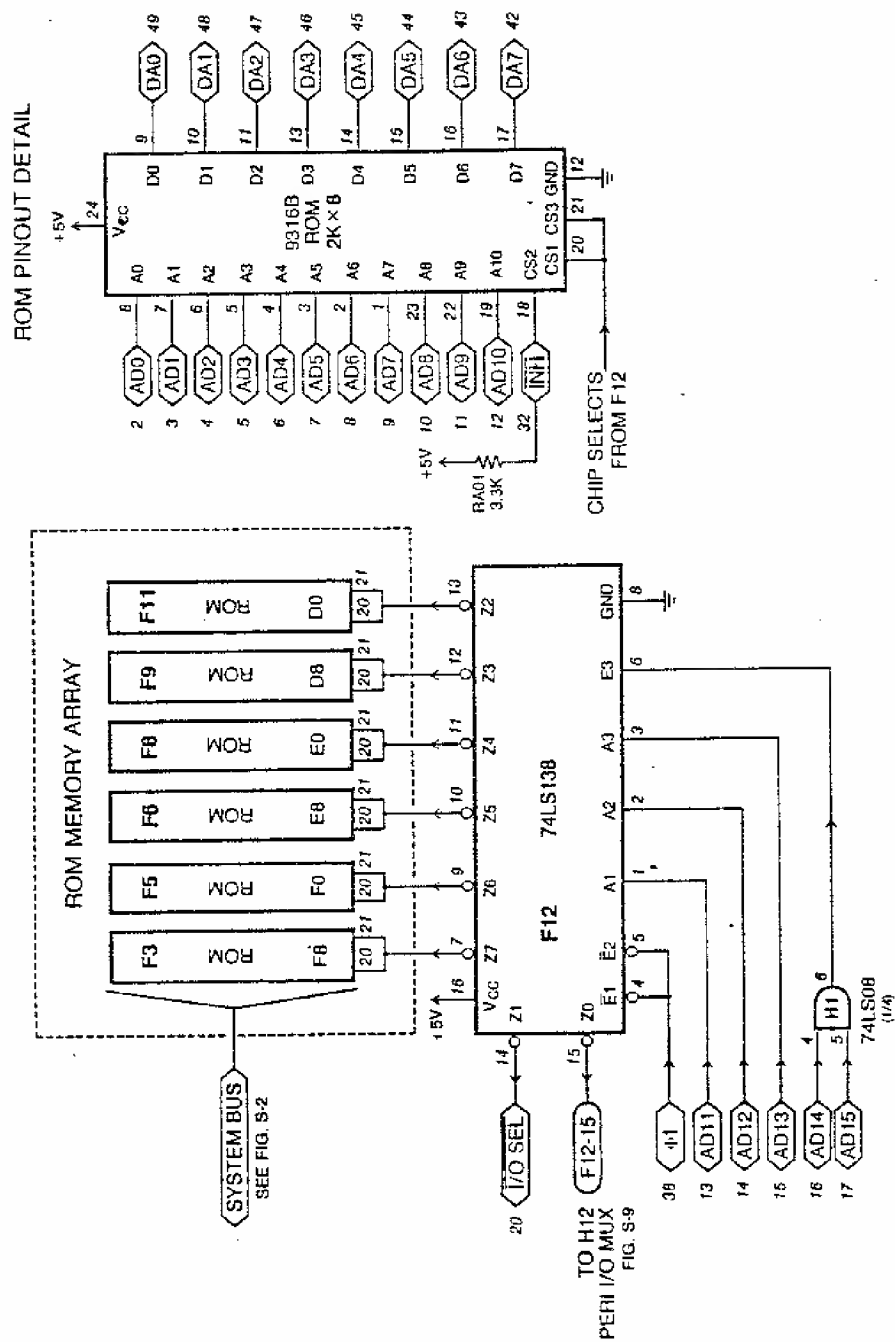


FIGURE S-5 ROM MEMORY

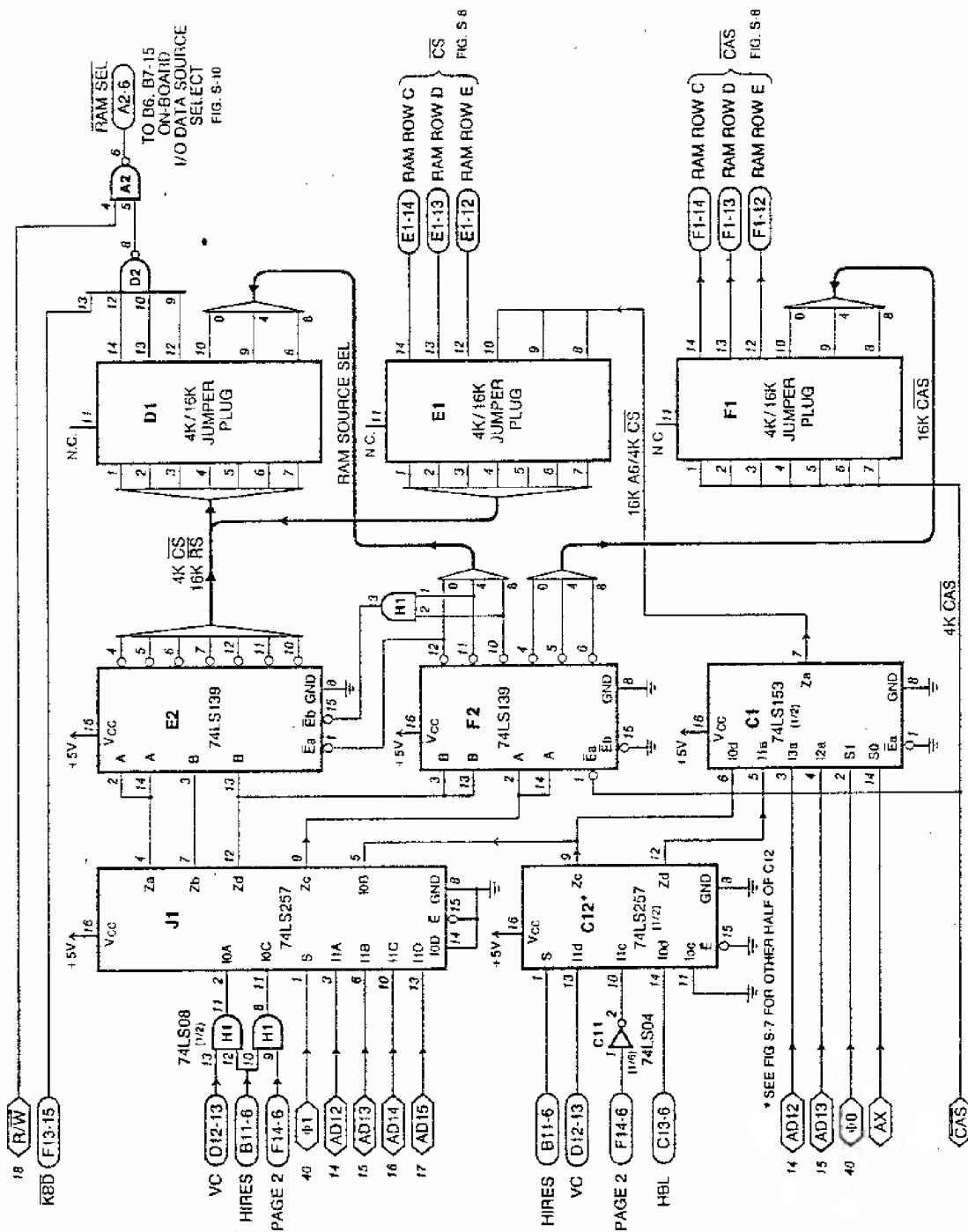
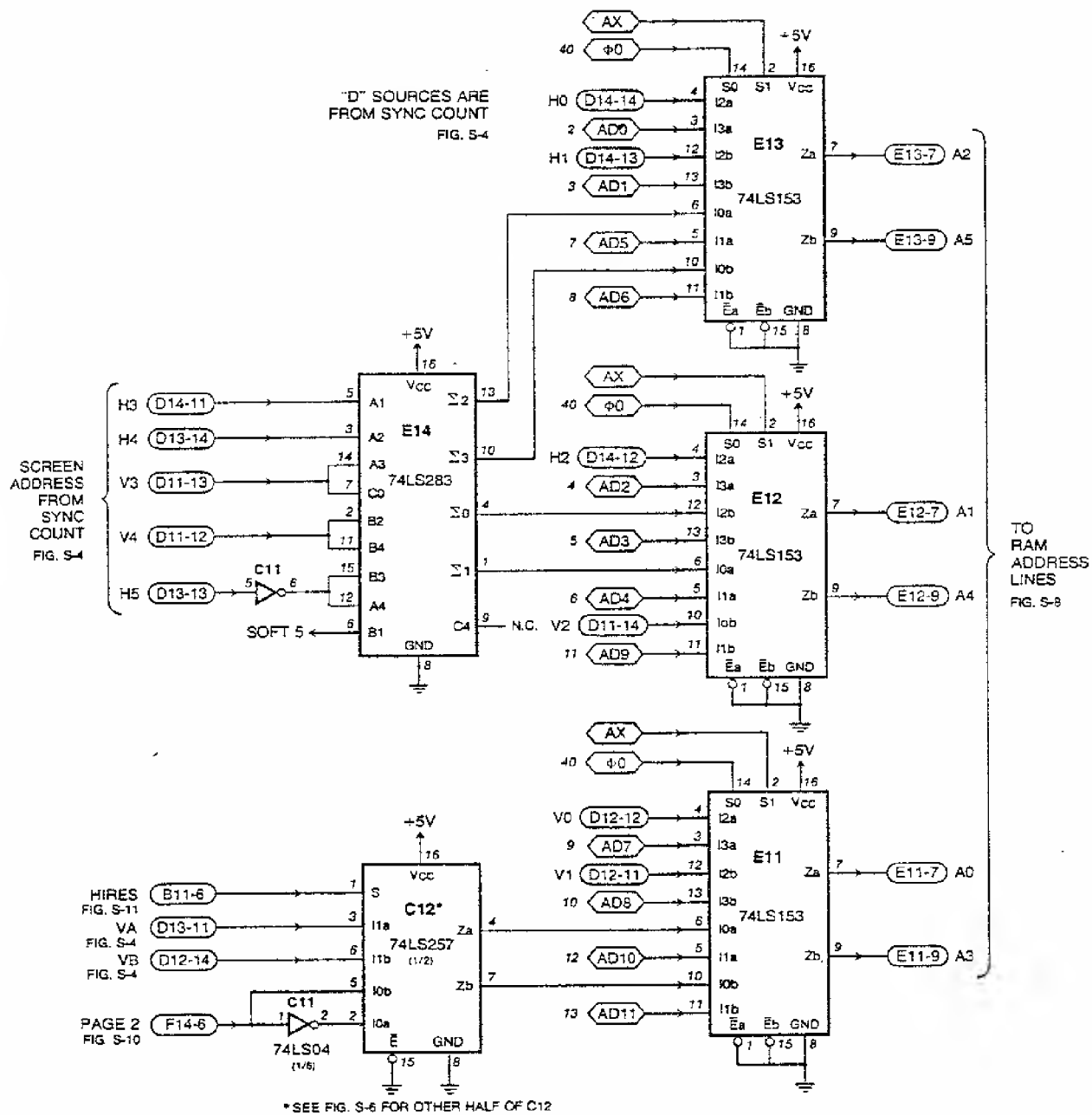


FIGURE S-6 4K/16K RAM SELECT





# I/O CONNECTOR DETAIL

TOP VIEW

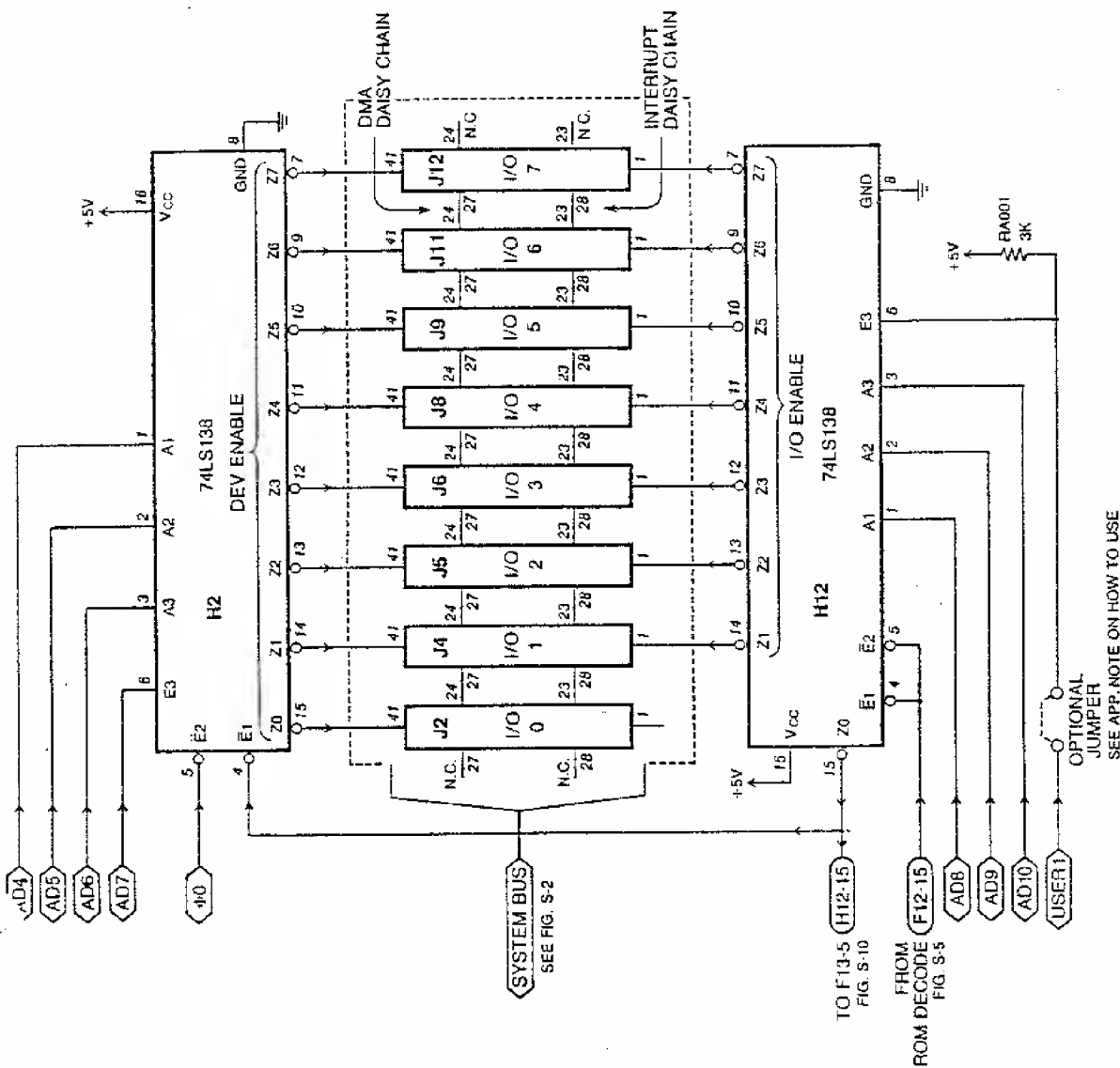
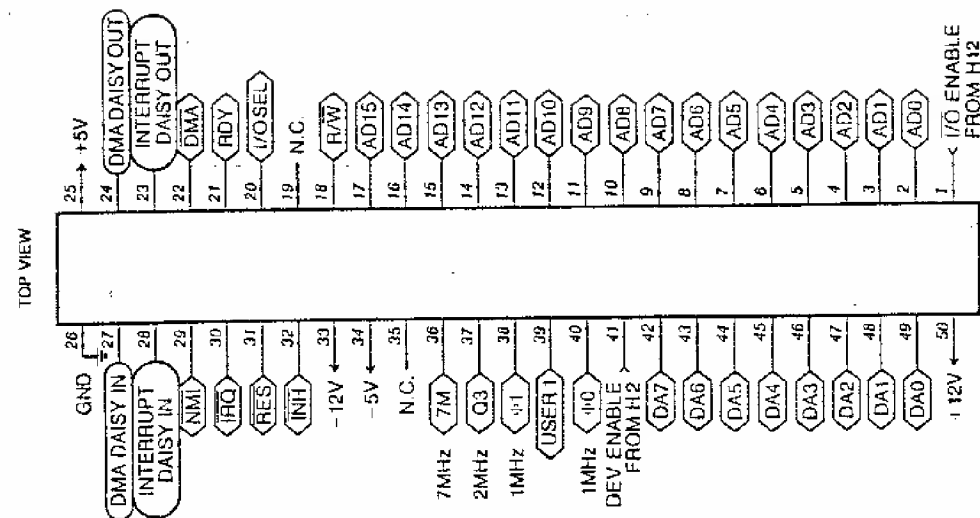


FIGURE S-9 PERIPHERAL I/O CONNECTOR PINOUT AND CONTROL LOGIC



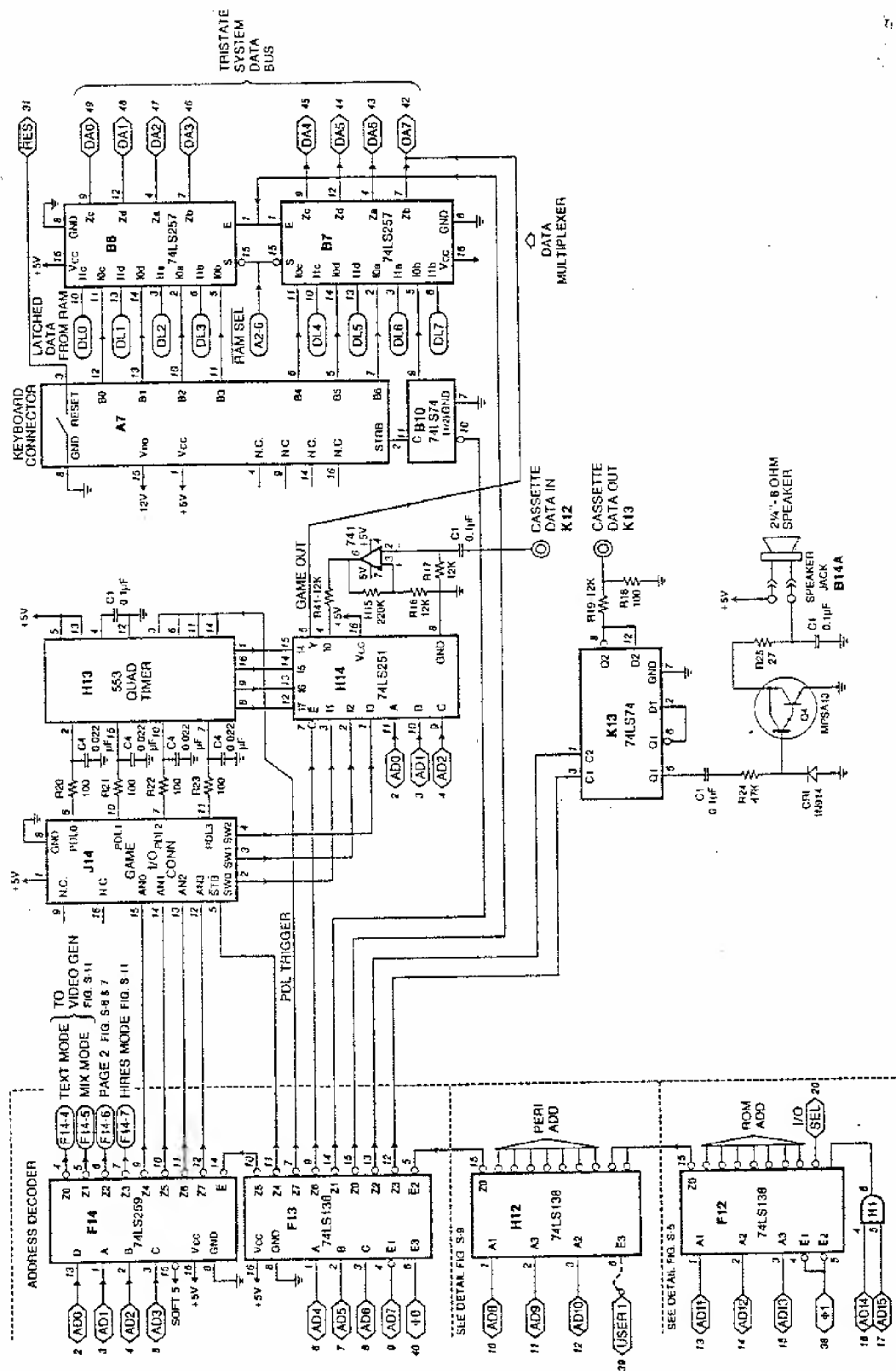


FIGURE S-1C ON-BOARD I/O

